

ARABIC
BASIC COURSE

The Writing System
of
Modern Standard Arabic

1976

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER

CONTENTS

	Page
Introduction	1
The Arabic writing system	1
Design of this book	2
 The letter <u>daal</u>	 6
The letter <u>daal</u>	8
Representation of short vowels	10
The <u>fatHa</u>	10
The <u>kasra</u>	12
The <u>sukuun</u>	14
The letter <u>raa'</u>	17
The letter <u>zaay</u>	21
The <u>damma</u>	23
The letter <u>waaw</u>	26
The <u>sadda</u>	29
Connectors and non-connectors	31
The letter <u>taa'</u>	32
The letter <u>daa'</u>	36
The importance of dots as parts of letters	38
Different shapes for the same letter	39
The letter <u>baa'</u>	40
The letter <u>taa'</u>	50
The letter <u>thaa'</u>	55
The symbols for <u>tanwiin</u> (nunation)	59
The letter <u>faa'</u>	61
The letter <u>kaaf</u>	68
The letter <u>alif</u> as representation of vowel length	77

	Page
The function of <u>alif</u> in representing <u>tanwiin</u>	81
The letter <u>kaaf</u> before vertical strokes	83
The letter <u>laam</u>	86
The combination <u>laam-alif</u>	95
The letter <u>waaw</u> as representation of vowel length	97
The letter <u>nuun</u>	98
The letter <u>qaaf</u>	104
The letter <u>miim</u>	109
The letter <u>Haa'</u>	120
The letter <u>xaa'</u>	131
The letter <u>jiim</u>	136
The letter <u>siin</u>	141
The letter <u>ṣiin</u>	151
The letter <u>ṣaad</u>	157
The letter <u>ḍaad</u>	167
The letter <u>yaa'</u> as a consonant	172
The letter <u>ḥaa'</u>	180
The letter <u>yaa'</u> as representation of vowel length	188
The letter <u>ḡayn</u>	191
The letter <u>ḡayn</u>	195
The letter <u>taa'</u> marbuuṭa	202
The symbol <u>alif maqṣuura</u>	208
The dagger <u>alif</u>	212
The <u>hamza</u> (for recognition)	217
The <u>madda</u>	223
The numerals	226
The <u>waṣla</u>	232
"Sun letters"	239
Alternate forms for certain letters	243
The flourished <u>qaaf</u>	243
The flourished <u>nuun</u>	245
The flourished <u>ḍaad</u>	247
The flourished <u>ṣiin</u>	248

	Page
The alternate forms of "	250
Additional alternate forms for recognition	253
Alternate forms of final <u>haa'</u> and final <u>taa' marbuuṭa</u>	253
Alternate forms of the combination <u>alif-laam</u>	254
Alternate forms of <u>kaaf-alif</u>	255
Alternate forms for combinations consisting of (1) a <u>ṛaa'</u> , <u>zaay</u> , <u>daal</u> , or <u>ḍaal</u> and (2) a following <u>haa'</u> or <u>taa' marbuuṭa</u>	255
Alternate forms of <u>alif maqṣuura</u> and final <u>yaa'</u>	256
Writing the <u>hamza</u>	257
I. The <u>hamza</u> in word-initial position	257
II. The <u>hamza</u> in word-final position	261
III. The <u>hamza</u> in word-medial position	267
APPENDIX I. GRAPHICAL SYMBOLS	283
List A: The Arabic Alphabet	283
List B: Additional Symbols	285
List C: <u>al-Huruufu l-'abjadiyyah</u>	286
APPENDIX II. REFERENCE TABLES	287
APPENDIX III. ANSWERS TO DISCRIMINATION EXERCISES	300

INTRODUCTION

The Arabic writing system

The Arabic alphabet is used by millions of people in the world today. It serves as the alphabet not only of the Arabic language, but also of languages such as Farsi (the language of Iran), Urdu (the official language of Pakistan), Kurdish, etc. Some languages, such as Turkish and Swahili, were written in the Arabic alphabet but have switched over to the Roman alphabet in recent times.

Unlike English, which uses the Roman alphabet and is written from left to right, Arabic is written from right to left. In addition, an Arabic book, newspaper, or magazine begins on what speakers of English would normally regard as the back cover and works toward the front.

The Arabic alphabet (as defined by Arabs) consists of a set of letters which represent the consonants as well as vowel length. Some of these letters have only one form; each of the rest, however, has several different shapes depending on where it occurs. The symbols for short vowels are small diacritical marks of which two are written above the consonant letters and one is written below those letters. The diacritical marks representing short vowels do not usually occur in handwritten and printed texts. It is as if the name /Husayn/* were

*Slant lines are used when reference is specifically to pronunciation. The phonology of Modern Standard Arabic and the Roman transcription employed in this book are discussed in Abdel-Malek's Sounds.

reduced in writing to Hsyn. When reading, an Arab sees the Arabic equivalent of Hsyn and his knowledge of how the word is pronounced tells him that the short vowel of the first syllable is /u/ and the short vowel of the second syllable is /a/. This feature of Arabic is not as formidable as it might seem at first. If you can read the English sentence "WHN DD Y DRNK TH MLK?", you should have a fairly clear understanding of how Arabic texts can be read even when the short vowels are not represented.*

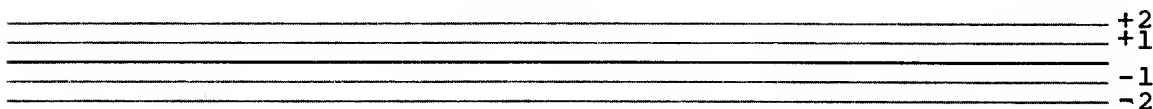
Design of this book

A. Recognition vs. production

The materials which present a given symbol are divided into two distinct sections:

(1) Section 1 helps the student to recognize the symbol in different positions; three tools are utilized for this purpose: verbal descriptions (which specify the variants and their positions of occurrence), discrimination exercises (which underscore the contrasts between partly similar shapes), and reading exercises (which make extensive use of contrasting shapes but include no unfamiliar symbols).

(2) Section 2 teaches the student to write the symbol in different positions. The set of lines shown below is used as a guide:



*In this book, a text is said to be "vocalized" when the short vowels are represented, and "unvocalized" when the short vowels are not represented.

The heavy middle line is used as the basic point of reference: symbols are said to rest on the middle line, rise above it, or fall below it. As shown, the other lines of the set are the +1 line, the +2 line, the -1 line, and the -2 line. As well as the relative positions, the relative sizes of successive letters are specified by the five lines.

Section 2 includes:

(a) Verbal descriptions which specify the variants and their positions of occurrence.

(b) Tracing and copying exercises which employ various techniques (such as arrows and numerals) to show the student where to begin and how to proceed.

(c) Utterances which are represented in terms of Roman symbols and which the student must write in Arabic script.

(d) Dictation exercises.

Rather than trace or copy on the pages of the book, the student is advised to use transparent sheets of paper which can be discarded when no longer needed. After he has written a sequence in the set of five lines described above, the student should write the same sequence on an ordinary notebook sheet, using a single line as a guide. For dictation exercises, a single line should be used as a guide.

A printed Arabic letter differs somewhat in appearance from its handwritten counterpart. The type of Arabic writing used for printing is known as the nasx style; that which Arabs use in normal handwriting is known as the ruq9a style. In this book, the student is taught to read the printed nasx style* and to write the ruq9a style.

*The nasx style taught is that of typewritten texts, of newspapers, and of most magazines. Expressions like "printed style", "nasx printing", and "nasx forms" should be understood accordingly.

The nasx style of most Arabic books employs some variants which are not taught here; however, the student will, upon completing this book, be able to recognize those variants with hardly any difficulty.

B. Review exercises

Each review exercise covers several sections and employs only familiar symbols.

Although it may be used in connection with any Modern Standard Arabic course, this book is written specifically as a companion to the language lessons of Abdel-Malek's Basic Course. The first few language lessons (which may be called the "preliminary lessons") are written in a Roman transcription; the essentials of Arabic script should be taught together with those lessons (each lesson specifies the Arabic symbols to be taught before moving to the next lesson).^{*} All language lessons other than the preliminary ones are written in Arabic script.

The review exercises in this volume are intended to make the transition from the Roman symbols to the Arabic script as easy as possible: each review exercise draws upon the preliminary language lessons for familiar vocabulary items whose graphical constituents have been taught; equally important is the fact that almost all the vocabulary items taught in the preliminary lessons occur in the review exercises. It is therefore important for the student to learn the spelling of all items in the review exercises.

As a general rule, the items constituting each review exercise are presented first with complete vocalization then with minimal vocalization.

^{*}For the psycholinguistic principles underlying this procedure, see the section "Reading and Writing" in Abdel-Malek's Manual.

C. Calligraphic models vs. normal handwriting*

The last review exercise compares calligraphic script with the normal, everyday usage of ruq9a handwriting.

D. Appendices

This book contains three appendices:

Appendix I lists the graphical symbols of Arabic. In List A, the letters of the alphabet are given in their usual order; in List C, they are given in the order used for enumeration. List B gives the diacritics and the three most common punctuation marks.

Appendix II illustrates various graphical combinations.

Appendix III gives the answers to all the discrimination exercises which are used in this book.

E. Options in using this book

If the reading exercises are recorded on tape, this book may be used in one of the following ways:

(1) Both recognition and production may be taught in class. In this case, the recorded exercises should be used for additional practice in the language laboratory or at home.

(2) The student may study Section 1 on his own (with the help of Appendix III and the tapes). In this case, the teacher should concentrate on teaching production.

*All the ruq9a models in this book have been written with an Osmiroid Italic Pen for the left-handed. The learner is advised to use the same pen when copying the models.

The letter "daal"

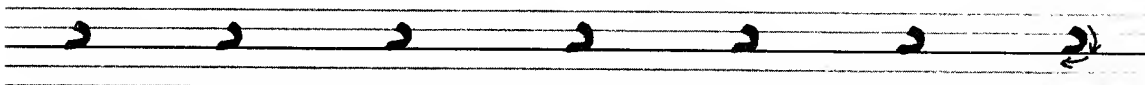
(1) The consonant /d/ is represented by a letter called daal. The line below shows five examples of this letter.

د د د د د

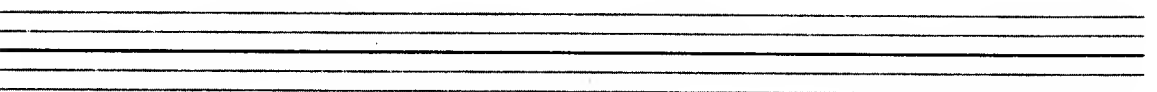
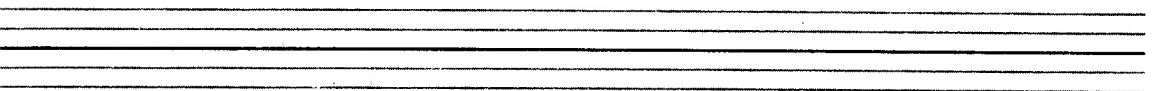
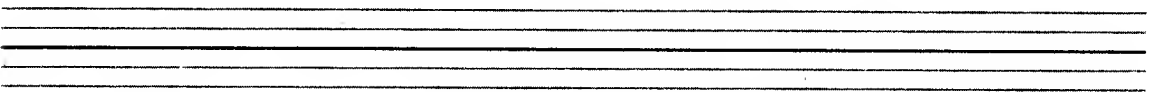
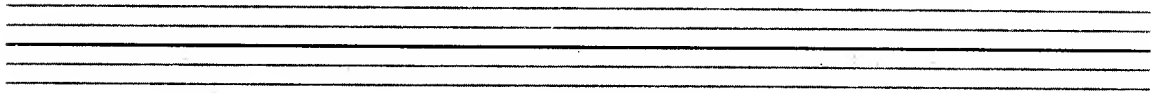
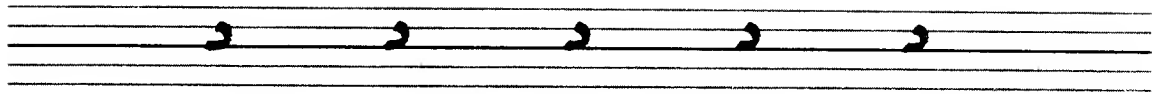
Study the shape of the letter carefully, then place a circle around each daal in the following sequence (starting on the right side of the page, as Arabs would do):

د ر ك د ز ن ح د ت ز د ل د ش د

(2) The letter daal (د) in the ruq9a style consists of two strokes: (a) a slightly slanting stroke which extends from the +1 line to the middle line, and (b) a horizontal stroke, written from right to left, which rests on the middle line. Trace the following sequence (from right to left). The arrows beside the first letter will show you where to begin and how to proceed.



Write the letter daal five times in each blank set of lines below (one sequence is given as a model). Make sure that the letter does not rise above the +1 line (if it does, it might be confused with the letter for /l/).



In each of the following sets of lines, write the letter daal five times from memory, without looking at the preceding material.

The letter "daal"

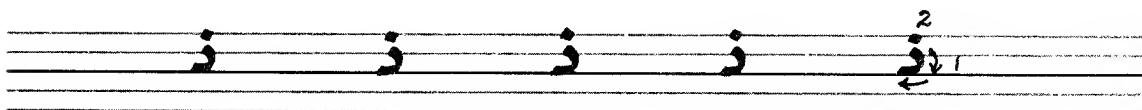
(1) The consonant /d/ is represented by the letter daal. The line below shows five examples of the letter daal in printed nasx style. Notice that daal and daal are identical in shape except that the former has a supra-script dot.

ﺩ ﺩ ﺩ ﺩ ﺩ

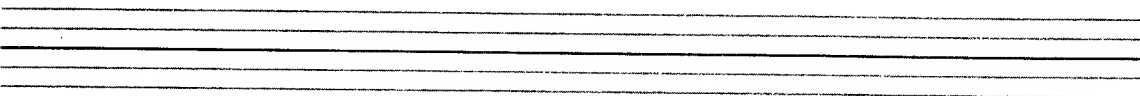
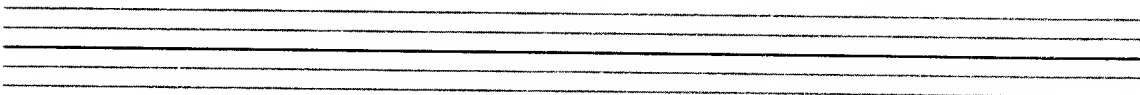
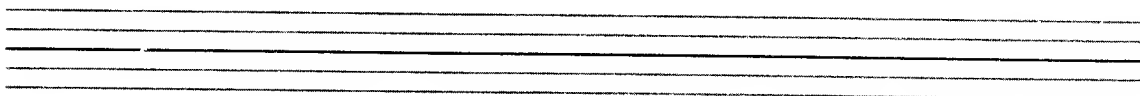
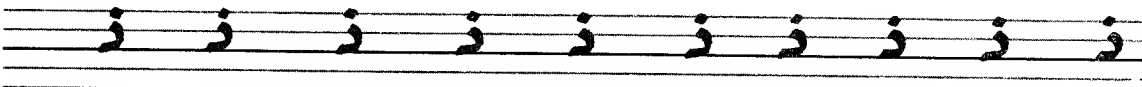
Study the shape of daal carefully, then place a circle around each daal in the following sequence:

ر ن ت ك ز ر ر ز ن ق ه ي ر ف ز

(2) In the ruq9a style, daal is written in exactly the same fashion as daal, but with a dot just above the basic part of the letter. Trace the following sequences (from right to left):



Write the letter daal ten times in each blank set of lines below. One sequence is given as a model.



Now write the letter daal ten times from memory, without looking at the preceding material.

Representation of short vowels

As was mentioned in the Introduction, the short vowels of Arabic are not usually represented in normal handwriting and printing. There are cases, however, where graphic representation of the short vowels is called for. Many books and magazines, for example, occasionally indicate the short vowels in a word which might otherwise be confused with another word. In the Koran, the holy book of Islam, the short vowels are always indicated to facilitate correct pronunciation when the text is read aloud. Arabic school books often indicate the short vowels to help Arab school-children read their language correctly.

The "fatHa"

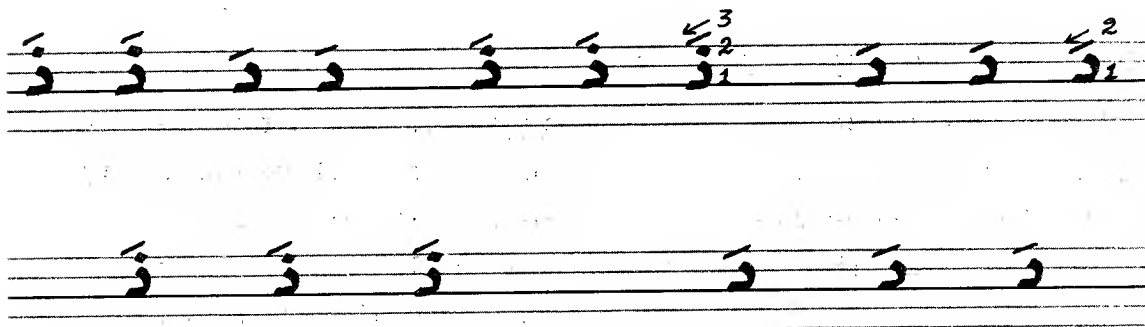
(1) When it follows a given consonant (in pronunciation), the short vowel /a/ is represented by a small slanting stroke (´) placed above the consonant letter. Thus the Arabic syllable /da/ would be represented by a small slanting stroke written above the daal: دَ ; the syllable /da/ would be represented by daal with the same small stroke above it: دَ . The line below shows three examples of /da/ (daal plus fatHa) and three examples of /da/ (daal plus fatHa).

دَ دَ دَ

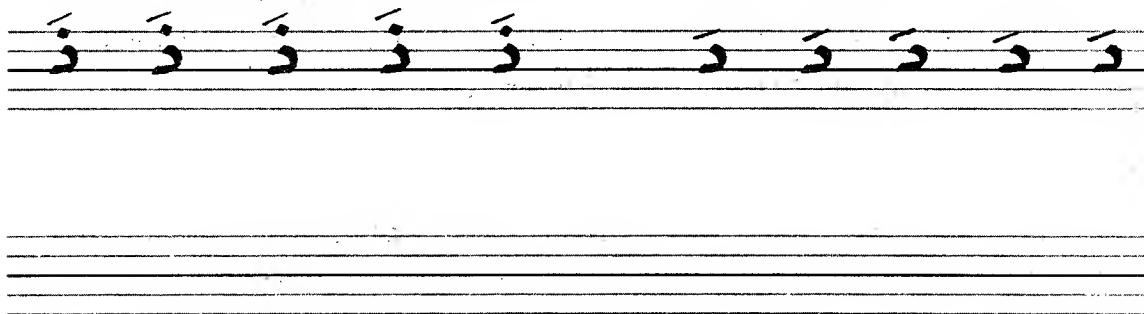
دَ دَ دَ

(2) In Arabic, the symbol representing the short vowel /a/ is called a fatHa. The fatHa in ruq9a script is identical to its counterpart in nasx printing.

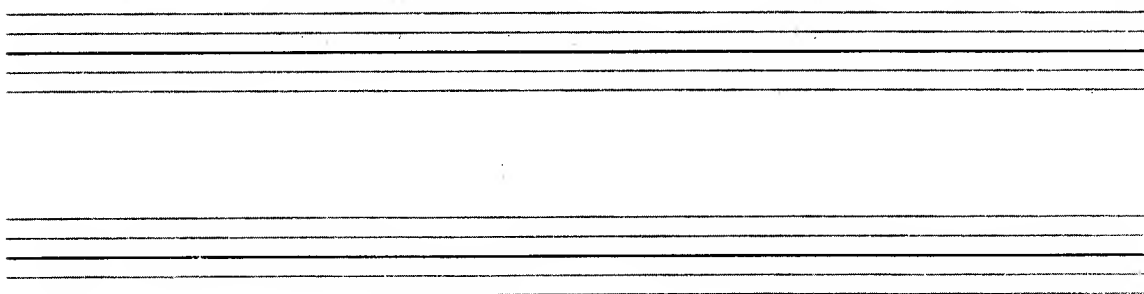
To write the fatHa, one makes a short diagonal stroke, from upper right to lower left, just above the consonant letter. Trace the following sequences:



Write each of the syllables /da/ and /da/ five times. The following sequence is a model.



Now write each of the syllables /da/ and /da/ ten times from memory, without looking at the preceding material.

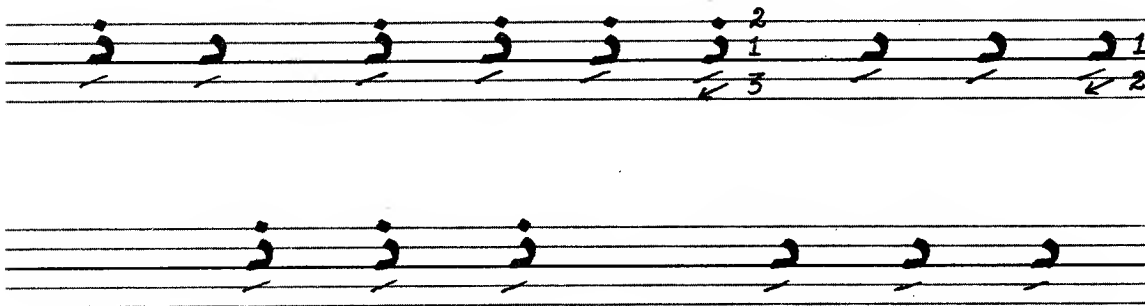


The "kasra"

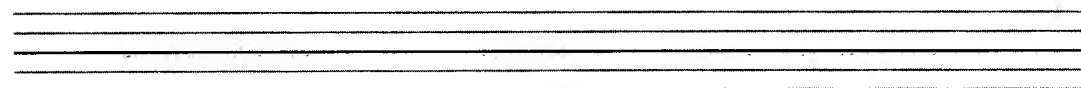
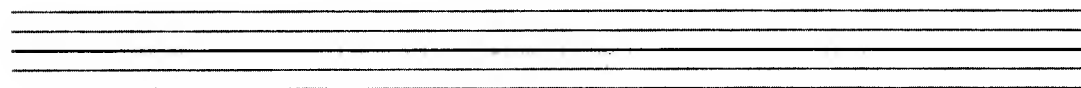
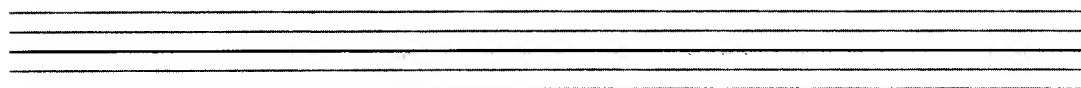
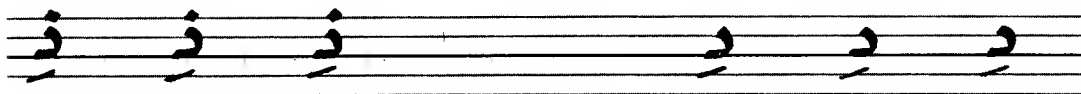
(1) When it follows a given consonant (in pronunciation), the short vowel /i/ is represented by a slanting stroke--called a kasra--which is identical in form to the fatHa; the kasra, however, is written underneath the consonant letter. The Arabic syllable /di/ would be represented by a daal which has a small slanting stroke underneath it: د ; similarly, the syllable /di/ would be represented by a daal with a small slanting stroke underneath it: دِ . The line below shows three examples of /di/ (daal plus kasra) and three examples of /di/ (daal plus kasra).

دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ

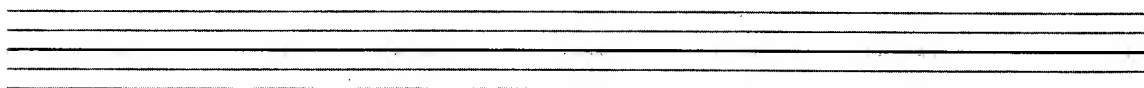
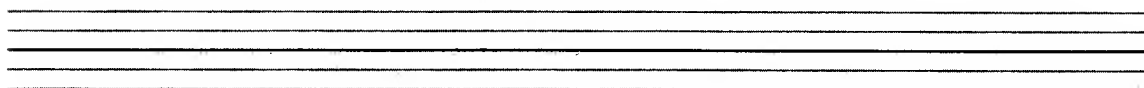
(2) The kasra in ruq9a script is identical to its counterpart in nasx printing. To write the kasra, one makes a short diagonal stroke (from upper right to lower left) directly below the consonant letter. Being a sub-script stroke, the kasra is written below the middle line. Trace the following sequences:



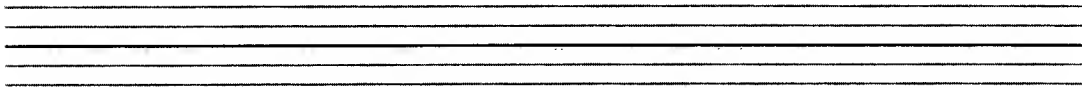
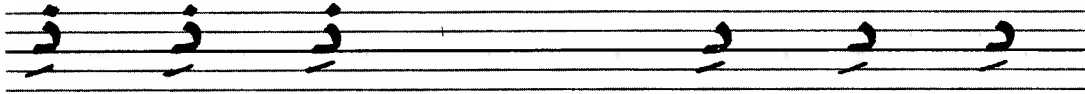
In each set of blank lines below, write the syllable /di/ three times and the syllable /ɔi/ three times. The following sequence is a model.



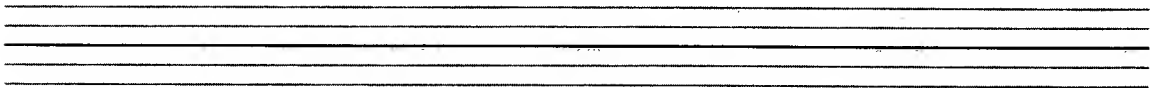
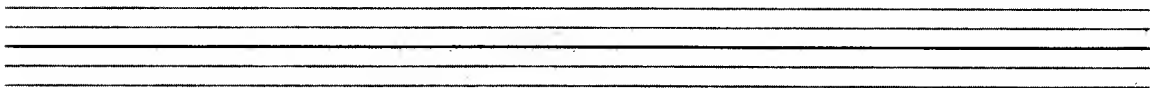
Now write each of the syllables /di/ and /ɔi/ five times from memory, without looking at the preceding material.



In each set of blank lines below, write the syllable /di/ three times and the syllable /ɔi/ three times. The following sequence is a model.



Now write each of the syllables /di/ and /ɔi/ five times from memory, without looking at the preceding material.



Reading exercise

You have now learned how to read and write four syllables: /da/, /di/, /da/, and /di/. Read the following sequences aloud.

دَ دَ دَ دَ دَ دَ دَ دَ
 دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ
 دَ دِ دِ دَ دَ دَ دَ دِ دِ دَ دَ دَ دَ
 دَ دَ دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ دَ دَ دِ دِ دَ دَ
 دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ دَ دَ دِ دِ دِ دِ

The "sukuun"

(1) The sukuun is a small circle (°) which occurs above a consonant letter to indicate that the consonant is not followed by a vowel. (In English, examples of a consonant not followed by a vowel are the /t/ in sit and the /l/ in salt). Thus /dad/ is written as دُ and /dadda/ is written as دُ دُ .

As true of the fatHa and the kasra, the sukuun does not normally occur in printed and handwritten texts. It does, however, occur when all the short vowels are represented; it also occurs when its absence would result in ambiguity. The line below shows some examples of the sukuun with daal and daal.

دُ دُ دُ دُ دُ دُ دُ دُ دُ دُ

Reading exercise

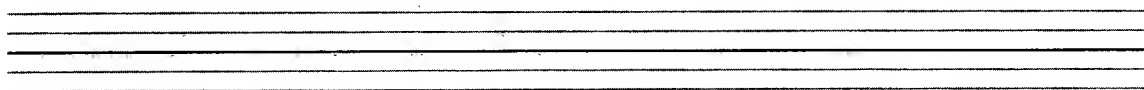
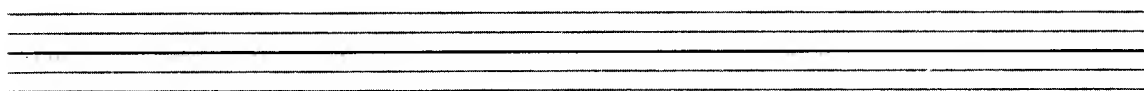
Read the following utterances aloud:

زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ
 زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ
 زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ
 زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ
 زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ
 زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ زَ

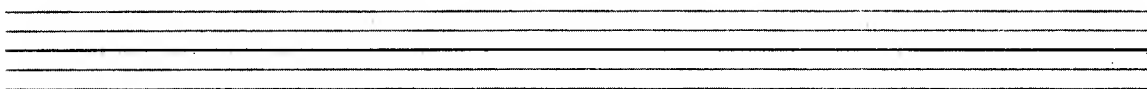
(2) In handwritten ruq9a texts, as in printed ones, the sukuun is a small circle placed above the consonant letter. Be sure to write it as a circle, not as a dot, since to write it as a dot could change the consonant; for example, a dot above daal (د) produces daal (ذ). Daal with a sukuun should be written as دُ , and daal with a sukuun should be written as ذُ . Trace the following sequence:



Copy the following sequence in each set of blank lines. Notice that the sukuun and the short-vowel symbols are supplied, from right to left, after all the consonants of a given word have been written.



Now write /did/ and /daɪ/ ten times each, supplying the diacritical marks in the appropriate places. Rely on your memory and do not look at the preceding material.



Dictation

Your teacher will dictate the following utterances several times in varying sequences:

دِ دَ دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ دِ

The letter "raa' "

(1) The consonant /r/ is represented by the letter raa'. The line below shows five examples of raa' in printed nasx style.

ر ر ر ر ر

Notice that raa' begins just above the middle line then slants downward and slightly to the left, forming almost a quarter of a circle. In contrast, both daal and daal are written entirely above the line and have an angular shape. In the sequence below, notice the difference between daal, daal, and raa':

رررر زز زز زز زز زز

Place a circle around each raa' in the following sequences:

ر ر ر ر ل ز ن ق د ر

ن ر ز د ه ر و ن ر و

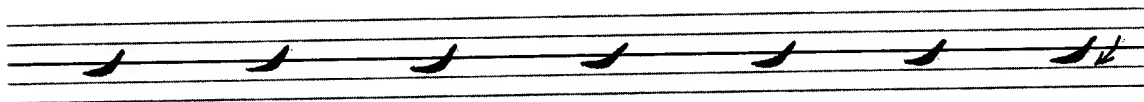
Read aloud the sequence of syllables below. Each syllable consists of raa' plus fatHa or kasra.

رَ رَ رَ رَ رَ رَ رَ رَ رَ رَ رَ

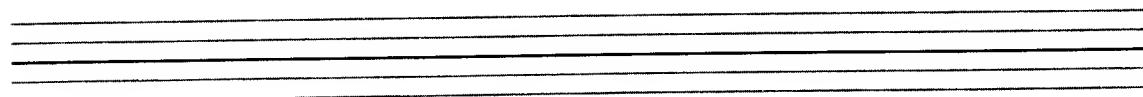
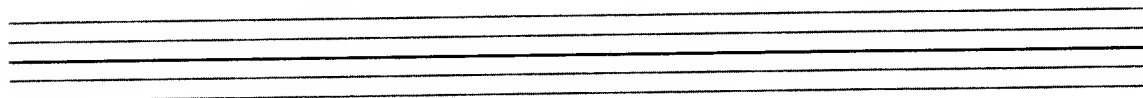
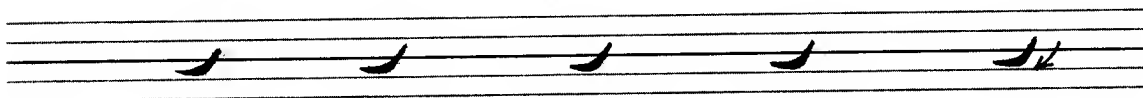
The sukuun can also occur with raa', as in the utterances below:

ذَرَّ ذَرَّ ذَرَّ ذَرَّ ذَرَّ ذَرَّ ذَرَّ
رَذَرَّ رَذَرَّ رَذَرَّ رَذَرَّ رَذَرَّ رَذَرَّ رَذَرَّ

(2) In the handwritten ruq9a style raa' is a single stroke which begins slightly above the middle line, slants downward toward the left, and ends up looking something like a quarter of a circle. The written form of raa', however, is not as rounded as the printed form. Trace the following examples of the letter raa'. The arrow beside the first raa' shows how to proceed when writing the letter.



Write the letter raa' five times in each blank set of lines below (one sequence is given as a model):



د د د د د د د د

[illegible]

[illegible]

Now write the following utterances five times each:
/rid/, /dar/, /daɾa/, /dardi/, and /ɖirda/.

The letter "zaay"

(1) The consonant /z/ is represented by the letter zaay. The line below shows five examples of zaay in printed nasx style.

ز ز ز ز ز

Notice that zaay and raa' are identical in shape, except that the former has a dot above the basic stroke. Thus, the difference between raa' and zaay is exactly the same as the difference between daal and daal. The line below gives an arbitrary sequence of the letters daal, daal, raa', and zaay. Identify each letter by naming it.

ز ر ز ر ز ر ز ر ز ر ز ر ز ر ز ر ز

Read aloud the sequences below:

ز ز ز ز ز ز ز ز ز ز ز

ز ر ز ر ز ر ز ر ز ر ز

Now read the following utterances aloud:

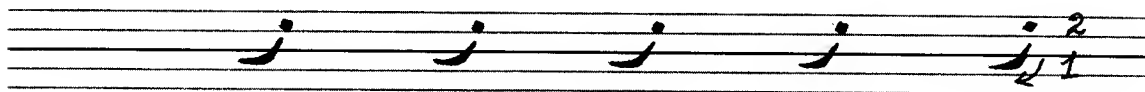
ز ز ز ز ز ز ز ز ز ز ز

ز ز ز ز ز ز ز ز ز ز ز

(2) In ruq9a script, zaay is identical to raa' except that the former has a dot above it. Trace the following sequence:

ز ز ز ز ز ز ز ز ز ز ز

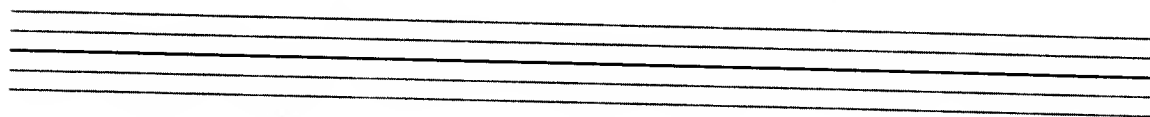
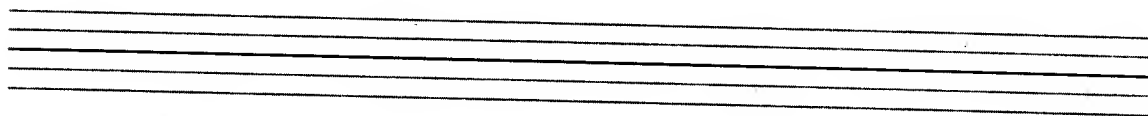
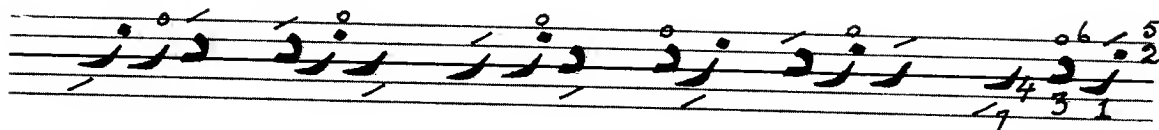
Write the letter zaay five times in each blank set of lines below (one sequence is given as a model):



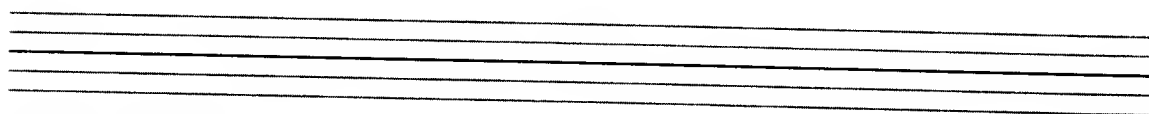
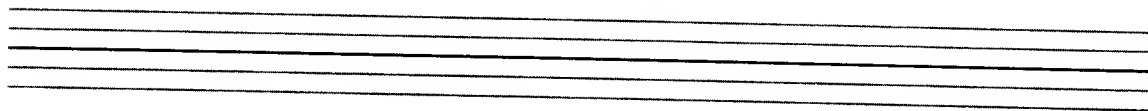
Write zaay ten times from memory, without looking at the preceding material.

Write the following utterances three times each:
/zadri/, /razda/, /zid/, /dizra/, rizda/, and /darzi/. The

first set of lines below gives one example of each.



Now write the following utterances two times each:
/zarzar/, /ɖardir/, and /radrid/.



The "ḍamma."

(1) When it follows a given consonant (in pronunciation), the short vowel /u/ is represented by a symbol--called a ḍamma--which resembles an elongated comma with a small curl as the top part ('). Like the fatHa, the ḍamma is written above the consonant letter; the syllable

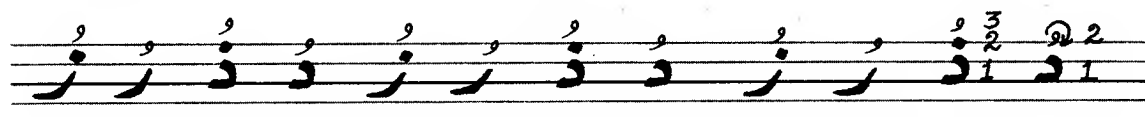
/du/, for example, would be represented by daal with a damma directly above it. The line below illustrates the four syllables /du/, /du/, /ru/, and /zu/.



(2) In the ruq9a style, the damma is similar to the symbol explained under (1) above. When writing the damma, one makes a very small, clockwise curl and then continues downward with a stroke similar to that of an English comma. Trace the following sequence of symbols:



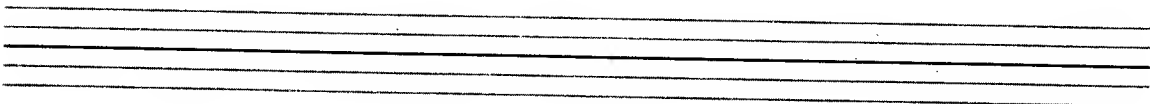
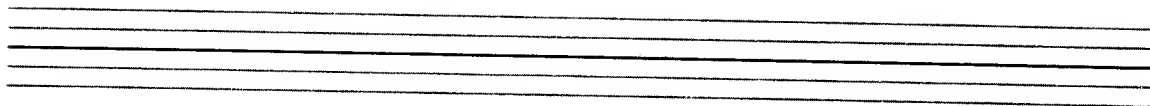
Write the syllables /du/, /du/, /ru/, and /zu/ in each blank set of lines below (one sequence is given as a model):



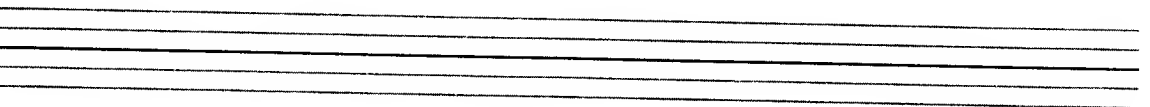
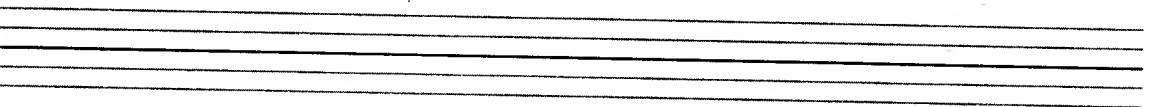
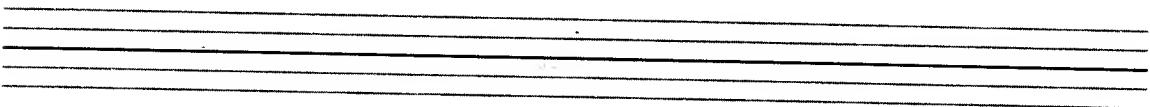
Blank sets of five-line staffs for writing practice.

Write each of the syllables /ru/ and /du/ ten times

from memory, without looking at the preceding material

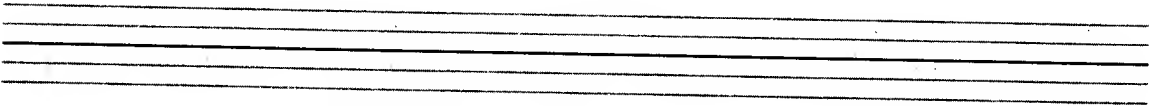
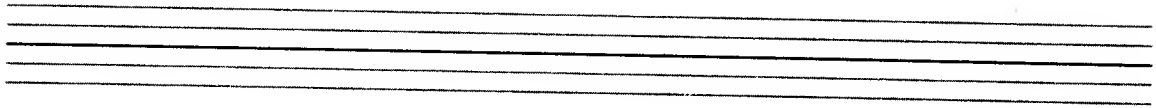


Write the following utterances in each blank set of lines below: /ruzdi/, /dadu/, /zur/, /dirda/, and /duzur/. One sequence is given as a model.

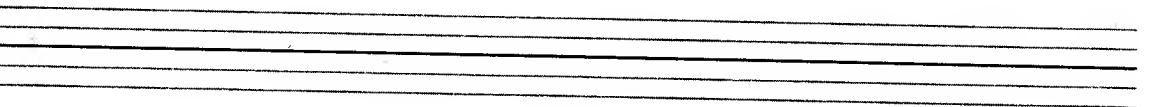
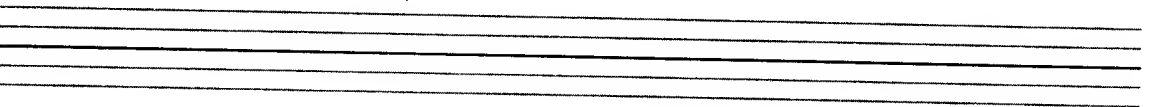
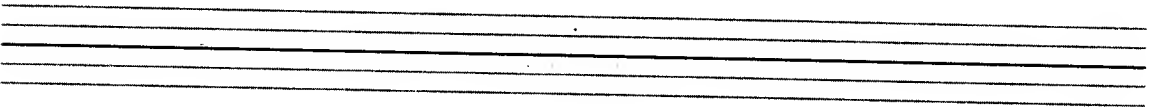


Now write the following utterances three times each:

from memory, without looking at the preceding material



Write the following utterances in each blank set of lines below: /ruzdi/, /dadu/, /zur/, /dirda/, and /duzur/. One sequence is given as a model.



Now write the following utterances three times each:

/darzi/, /zurida/, /rizda/, /durida/.

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate the following utterances several times in varying sequences:

ذُرْ ذُرْ ذُرْ ذُرْ ذُرْ

The letter "waaw"

(1) The consonant /w/ is represented by the Arabic letter waaw. In shape, waaw is similar to the damma (ء) except that it is larger. The following are five examples of the letter waaw in printed nasx style:

و و و و و

Place a circle around each waaw in the following sequences:

و ق ر و ن ل ع و ز ف ق ص و ق

ر د و ن و ط ن ه و ق و ف ن ز و

Read aloud the following sequences:

وُ وُ وُ وُ وُ وُ وُ وُ وُ وُ
 وِ وِ وِ وِ وِ وِ وِ وِ وِ وِ
 رُو رُو رُو رُو رُو رُو رُو رُو رُو رُو

The diphthong /aw/ is represented by و (the fatHa being on the consonant letter which precedes the waaw). For example, the utterances /dawru/ and /zawdu/ would be written as follows:

دَوْرُو زَوْدُو

Each of the following utterances contains the diphthong /aw/. Read the utterances aloud:

دَوْرُو زَوْدُو دَوْرُو زَوْدُو دَوْرُو زَوْدُو دَوْرُو زَوْدُو

(2) The handwritten ruq9a-style waaw is similar to the waaw of nasx printing. When writing the waaw, one begins on the middle line and produces a round stroke, moving in a clockwise direction (the circle should be between the middle line and the +1 line; it is usually, but not necessarily, filled in). The round stroke is followed by a tail which extends to the -1 line and almost forms a quarter of a circle. Trace the examples below:



Write each of the following sequences three times:
/wazru/, /dawru/, /wardu/, /warada/, and /ɗarwi/. A
model is given below.

وَزْرُ دَوْرُ وَرْدُ وَرْدُ

Now write each of the following sequences three times
without referring to the preceding pages: /wazara/,
/wizru/, /dawru/, /darzi/, and /ɗarwu/.

The "šadda"

(1) Any consonant in the Arabic language can be doubled (i.e., prolonged in pronunciation). This doubling is indicated by a small, double semi-circle (called šadda) which is written above the consonant letter; thus /dd/ would be written as د. You may find it helpful to remember that the doubling of a consonant is indicated by a double semicircle. If the vowel which follows the doubled consonant is either /a/ or /u/, the vowel symbol is placed above the šadda: دَ, دُ; if the vowel is /i/, the kasra is placed either directly below the šadda and above the consonant letter, or below the consonant letter (with the šadda appearing alone above the letter): دِ, دِ. Thus the utterance /radda/ is written as رَدَّ; the utterance /raddu/ is written as رَدُّ; the utterance /raddi/, however, may be written either as رَدِّ or as رَدِّ.

Read aloud the following utterances which contain doubled consonants. Be sure to prolong the pronunciation of doubled consonants since failing to do so can change the meaning of the word.

رَدَّ رَدِّ رَدُّ رَدِّ رَدِّ رَدِّ رَدِّ
رَدِّ رَدِّ رَدِّ رَدِّ رَدِّ رَدِّ رَدِّ

Like any other Arabic consonant, /w/ can be doubled. The utterance /rawwada/ (with /ww/ in the middle) is written as رَوَّدَ. Read aloud the following words:

رَوَّدَ رَوَّدَ رَوَّدَ رَوَّدَ رَوَّدَ

Some of the utterances below contain a doubled consonant and some do not. Read each utterance aloud, being careful to prolong any consonant which has a sadda.

رَد رَد رَد رَد رَد رَد رَد رَد
رَد رَد رَد رَد رَد رَد رَد رَد

(2) The handwritten ruq9a form of the sadda is similar to the printed nasx form. In writing the sadda, one starts from the right and proceeds toward the left. Trace the utterances below:

رَد رَد رَد رَد رَد رَد رَد رَد

Write the following sequence three times:

رَد رَد رَد رَد رَد رَد رَد رَد

Without referring to any of the preceding materials, write each of the following utterances three times in the lines below: /ruzzu/, /dawru/, /dawwara/, /darri/,

/durra/, /rudda/, /wazaṛa/, /raddid/.

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate, in varying sequences, the following utterances:

رَدِّدْ دَرَّ وَرِدَّ وَرَدَّ رَزِّ زِدَّ وَزَّ وَزَّوِّ زَوِّدَّ دُرِّ

Connectors and non-connectors

In regard to their forms, Arabic letters fall into two categories: connectors and non-connectors. A connector is joined to any letter which follows it in the same word; a non-connector is never joined to a following letter.

up till now you have encountered only non-connectors. In the words /darzi/, /ḍarra/, and /zawwid/, for example, no two letters are joined because daal, ḍaal, ṛaa', zaay,

and waaw are non-connectors:

زَوِّدَ ذَرَّ دَرَزَ

With the exception of alif, all of the Arabic letters which you will learn from now on will be connectors.

The letter "ṭaa' "

(1) The emphatic consonant /ṭ/ is represented by the letter ṭaa'. Below are five examples of this letter:

ط ط ط ط ط

Place a circle around each ṭaa' in the following sequence:

ط ض م ط ف ض ط م ط ظ ق ل ط ض ه ظ

Read aloud the following sequences:

طَ طُ طِ طَ طُ طِ طُ طِ طُ

رَظَ رَظِ رَظُ رَظَ رَظِ رَظُ رَظَ رَظِ رَظُ

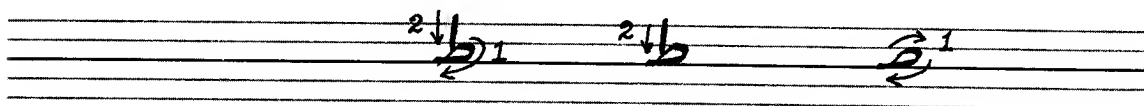
The letter ṭaa' is a connector; this means that ṭaa' is joined to any letter which follows it in the same word. For example, in the word /ṭarada/, ṭaa' is joined to the following raa':

طَرَدَ طَرَدَ طَرَدَ طَرَدَ

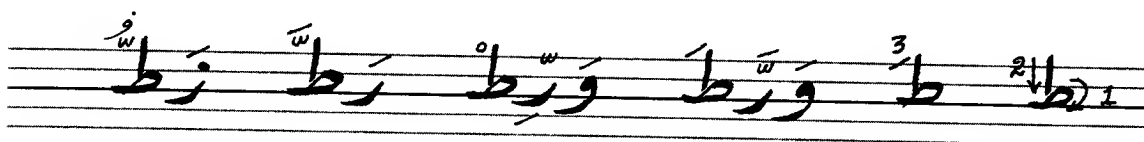
Likewise, ṭaa' is joined to a following daal, raa', zaay, or waaw. Study the examples below and read them aloud:

طَوَدَ طَرَدَ طَرَدَ طَرَدَ طَرَدَ طَرَدَ طَرَدَ طَرَدَ

(2) The handwritten ruq9a form of ṭaa' is similar to the printed nasx form. Writing the ṭaa' requires two separate strokes: the first is an oblong circle which rests on the middle line and which is written in the direction indicated below by arrow number 1; the line which closes the oblong circle is extended to the left, thus producing a short tail which rests on the middle line and which does not curve upwards. The second stroke is a vertical line which is written from top to bottom and which lands on the left corner of the oblong circle; this stroke is indicated by arrow number 2.



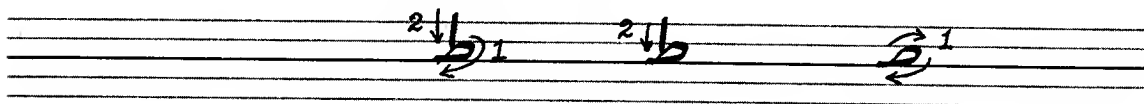
Trace the following sequence:



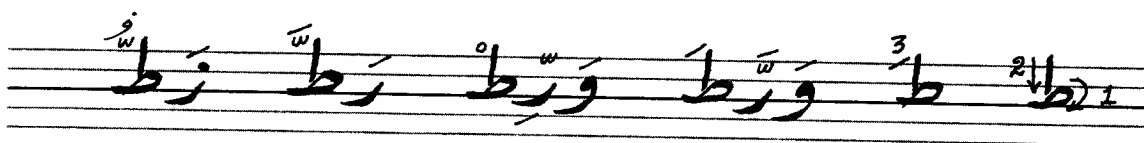
When ṭaa' is to be followed by another letter, you must make the oblong circle and move on until you have finished writing the basic strokes of the whole connected sequence before coming back to add the vertical stroke of the ṭaa'. For example, in a word like /ṭarada/, you should complete the oblong circle and the following raa' before going back to put in the vertical stroke of the ṭaa' (then you should proceed to write the daal of /ṭarada/).^{*} Study

^{*}A similar procedure is followed in writing English words when one crosses the t's and dots the i's.

(2) The handwritten ruq9a form of ṭaa' is similar to the printed nasx form. Writing the ṭaa' requires two separate strokes: the first is an oblong circle which rests on the middle line and which is written in the direction indicated below by arrow number 1; the line which closes the oblong circle is extended to the left, thus producing a short tail which rests on the middle line and which does not curve upwards. The second stroke is a vertical line which is written from top to bottom and which lands on the left corner of the oblong circle; this stroke is indicated by arrow number 2.



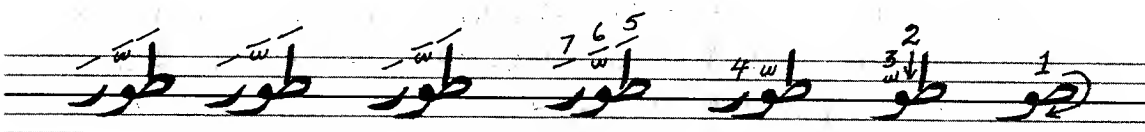
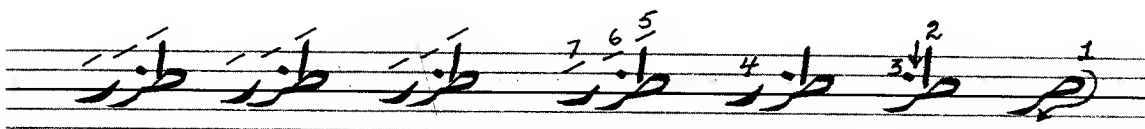
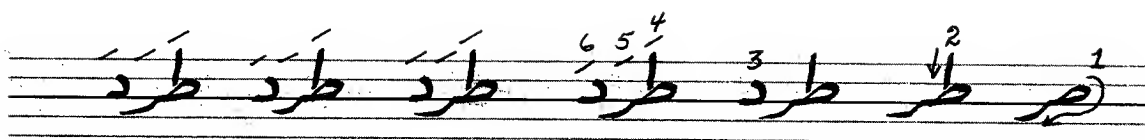
Trace the following sequence:



When ṭaa' is to be followed by another letter, you must make the oblong circle and move on until you have finished writing the basic strokes of the whole connected sequence before coming back to add the vertical stroke of the ṭaa'. For example, in a word like /ṭarada/, you should complete the oblong circle and the following raa' before going back to put in the vertical stroke of the ṭaa' (then you should proceed to write the daal of /ṭarada/).^{*} Study

^{*}A similar procedure is followed in writing English words when one crosses the t's and dots the i's.

the examples below.



Trace the last three words in each of the above sequences.

The basic shape of daal and daal after a connector--such as ṭaa'--is slightly different from the shape already taught. When daal or daal is not connected, the upper part of the basic stroke is inclined to the left: د , ذ ; however, when joined to a connector, the upper part of the basic stroke is slightly inclined to the right. Study the following examples:



Notice that an ascent from the preceding joining-line is necessary in writing daal or daal; in contrast, a descent is necessary in writing ṭaa'.

Trace the words written in the first set of lines below, then write those words five more times in the

second set of lines.

وَطِيَّ وَطِرَ وَطَدَ وَطَرَّ وَطَرَّ وَطَرَّ وَطَرَّ

Write each of the following utterances three times in the blank lines below (an example of each utterance is given in the first set of lines): /ṭurida/, /warraṭa/, /waṭṭada/, /ṭaraza/, /ṭawwara/, /ṭardu/, and /ṭazru/.

طَرْدَ وَرَّطَ وَطَدَ طَرَزَ طَوَّرَ طَرَّدَ طَرَزَ

Without referring to the preceding materials, write each of the following utterances two times in the lines below: /ṭawwara/, /ṭawwir/, /ṭarada/, /warriṭ/, /waṭada/,

/ṭurida/, /ṭaraza/, and /ṭazru/.

The letter "ḍaa' "

(1) The consonant /ḍ/ is represented in Arabic by the letter ḍaa'. The only difference between the Arabic symbols for /ṭ/ (ط) and /ḍ/ (ظ) is that the latter has a dot above the oblong circle; in every other respect, the two letters are identical. Read the following utterances aloud:

طَ ظَ طِ ظِ طُ ظُ طَ ظَ طِ ظِ طُ ظُ طَ ظَ طِ ظِ طُ ظُ

رَظَّ ظَرَّ ظَرَدَ ظِرَّ ظُرُّ وَظِرَّ وَظِرَ

وَرَّظَ وَرَّظَ طِرَدَ طِرَدَ وَظَدَ طَوَّرَ طَرَزُ وَطَرُ وَظِرَ

(2) As true of ṭaa', the handwritten ruq9a form of ḍaa' is similar to the printed nasx form. When writing ḍaa', one produces a ṭaa' and then adds a dot above the oblong circle. Trace the examples below:

ظَ ظِ ظُ ظَرَّ وَظِرَّ وَرَّظَ

Write the following sequence three times:

وَرَّظَ طَرَدَ وَطَدَ وَظَدَ طَوَّرَ

Without consulting the preceding material, write each of the following utterances two times in the lines below:
/ṭawwir/, /warraḍa/, /ṭarzu/, /ḍarri/, /ṭardu/, /ḍarada/.

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate to you, in varying sequences, the following utterances:

طَرَزَ وَظَّ وَرَدَّ زُدَّ طَوَّرَ

The importance of dots as parts of letters

As you have probably realized by now, dots are a vital part of certain Arabic letters. The elimination or addition of a dot may result in changing the letter. So far you have had three examples of this phenomenon:

(1) When a dot is added above د (the letter daal which represents /d/), the result is ذ (the letter daal which represents /ð/).

(2) When a dot is added above ر (the letter raa' which represents /r/), the result is ز (the letter zaay which represents /z/).

(3) When a dot is added above ط (the letter taa' which represents /t/), the result is ظ (the letter taa' which represents /ð/).

Since the Arabic alphabet uses dots to differentiate two or more letters which would otherwise be identical, the student of Arabic does not have to learn very many basic shapes. In the letters which you will learn from now on, the presence or absence of dots will continue to be of vital importance. Some of these letters will have no dots at all; some will have a dot either above or below the basic stroke; some will have two dots either above or below the basic stroke; and some will have three dots above the basic stroke. Therefore, when learning to recognize and write Arabic letters, students must pay attention to:

- (1) the basic stroke of each letter,
- (2) the presence or absence of dots with the basic stroke,
- (3) the number of dots present, and
- (4) the placement of dots (i.e., whether the dots are above or below the basic stroke).

The next three letters to be presented illustrate

the importance of the factors mentioned above. Those letters have the same basic stroke; they are distinguished one from the other only by means of dots.

Different shapes for the same letter

Each of the Arabic letters presented so far has the same shape in all positions (the only exceptions to this statement are the ruq9a forms of daal and ḍaal which vary slightly depending on whether they are connected or not connected). The letter taa', for example is written as ط no matter where it occurs:

طَرَدَ وَطَدَ وَرَّطَ

The same holds true for ḍaa', waaw, raa', and zaay:

<u>ḍaa'</u>	وَرَّطَ	وَطَرَّ	ظَرَّ
<u>waaw</u>	دَوَّ	طَوَّرَ	وَرَّطَ
<u>raa'</u>	طَوَّرَ	طَرَدَ	رَوَّ
<u>zaay</u>	طَرَزَ	زَوَّزَ	زَوَّ
<u>daal</u>	وَطَدَ	زَدَرَ	دَوَّرَ
<u>ḍaal</u>	وَدَّوَدَ	وَدَّرَ	دَرَّ

The alif (which will be presented in the near future) is one more letter which has the same shape (ا) in all positions. Of the remaining letters, some have two shapes, others have three, others have four, and still others have five; the shape which a given letter has depends on whether it occurs:

(1) initially in a joined sequence of letters (this

position may be at the beginning of the word or following a non-connector);

- (2) medially in a joined sequence of letters;
- (3) finally in a joined sequence of letters; or
- (4) independently (i.e., not joined to a preceding or a following letter).

The expressions "initially", "medially", "finally", and "independently" will be used to designate occurrence in the positions specified above.

The forms which occur finally and independently (when different from those which occur initially and medially) are referred to as the "flourished" forms; the flourished forms are almost always longer than the other forms. For a given letter, the citation form (i.e., the one cited whenever reference is made to the letter as such) is the flourished form which occurs independently.

The letter "baa' "

(1) The consonant /b/ is represented by the Arabic letter baa'. Initially, the shape of baa' is ب . The initial form of baa', then, consists of a small vertical line which curves horizontally to the left upon reaching the middle line. The right corner of the letter has a subscript dot. Being a connector, baa' (like taa' and daa') is joined to any letter which follows it in the same word. Below are five examples of initial baa'.

ب ب ب ب ب

The above examples of initial baa' are theoretical since the initial form of any connector is always joined to a following letter. Below are some examples of initial baa' joined to a following letter:

بط بد بن بر بز بو

Place a circle around each initial baa' in the following sequences:

م ب ي ب ن س ي ج ف

ب ي ف ن ب ق ب ج ض

Read the following words aloud:

بُذُّ بُدَّ بَدُو بَدَر بَرَّ بَرَك بَرَد بُرْدُ بَذَر بَرَّ بَطْرُ
يُرُّ بُرُّ بَرُّ بُرْدُ بَرَدُ بُدَر بُدَر بَذَر بَدُو بَطُّ

Remember that a letter's initial shape is used not only at the beginning of a word, but also in the middle of a word after a non-connector. Below are some examples of initial baa' occurring word-medially after a non-connector:

دَبَّرَ وَرَّ رَبطَ زَبَدَ وَدَّ

Read aloud the following Arabic utterances:

دَبَّرَ دَبَّرَ رَبطَ رَبطَ زَبَدَ وَدَّرَ وَدَّرَ رَبطَ دَبَّرَ

The medial shape of baa' is similar to the initial shape: the two differ in that the medial shape is joined from behind and thus has the following appearance: ب. Given below are some examples of medial baa':

طبر طَبَدَ ظَبَدَ ظَبَطَ بَبَدَ

Place a circle around each medial baa' in the following sequence:

ب ن ي ب ف ن ج ف ت ب

Read the following utterances:

بِرْ دَبْرُ بَيْدَ طِبَطَ زَيْدُ طَبَدَ رَيْطَ ظَبْدُ رَيْطُ رُيَطَ وَدَرُ
 بَرَّ بَرَّ بَرَّ بَرَّ بَرَّ بَرَّ بَرَّ بَرَّ بَرَّ بَرَّ بَرَّ بَرَّ
 زَيْدُ بَدْرُ رَيْطُ بَرَّ وَدَرُ دَبْرُ بَطَّ بَرَّ رَيْطُ بَدَّ وَدَرُ

When medial baa' precedes a raa' or a zaay, it assumes a special shape which rises slightly above the preceding joining-line. Study the shape of medial baa' in the following words:

بَيْرُ طَبَرِ طَبْرُ بَيْزِرِ بَطْرِ وَبَرُ

The flourished form of baa' (used in final position and independently) is ب . The final shape and the citation form differ in that the former is joined to a preceding letter: ب .

Here are some examples of final baa':

ط ب ب ط ب د ب و ط ط ب د ب

And here are some examples of independent baa':

د ب ر ب ب ط ب د ب د ر ب ط ب

Place a circle around each baa' in the following sequences:

ت ب ف ب ق ت ب ن ي ت ب ج

ث ب ض ب ث م ن ب ض ب ف ب ف

Read aloud the utterances below:

طَبَّ طَبَّ دَبَّ طُبُّ طُبَّ دُبَّ دَبَّ دَرَّبَ

رَبَّ بَوَّبَ دَبَّ دَرَّبَ دَرَّبُ دُرَّبَ طَرَّبَ

دُبُّ رُبُّ بَوَّبَ دُبُّ دُرَّبَ دَرَّبَ دَرَّبُ

دَرَّبَ طَرَّبُ طُبُّ دَبَّ دَرَّبَ طَرَّبَ

Now read the utterances of the following exercise; they show baa' in all possible positions.

بُرُّ بُدُّ بَطُّ دَبَّرَ رَبَّطَ رَطَطَ طَبَّرَ طُبُّ دَبَّ دَرَّبَ

دَرَّبُ دَبَّ طَرَّبَ بَرَّدَ رَطَطَ طَبَّرَ طَبُّ طَرَّبَ

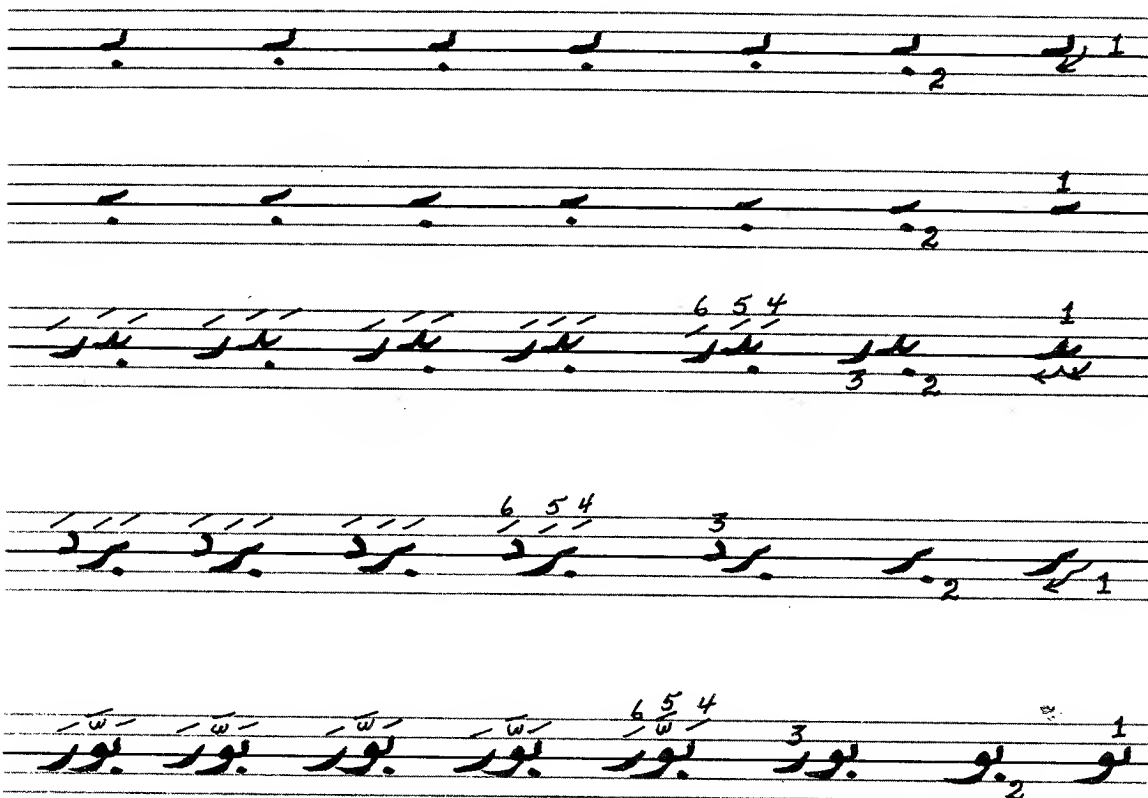
دَرَّبَ طَبَّرَ طَبَّ رَطَطَ بَطُّ دَبَّرَ بَرُّ بَدَّرَ

رَبَّ دَبَّ بُدُّ بَدُّو طُبَّ طَبَّ طُبُّ دَبَّ دَبَّ

بَرَّدَ طَرَّبَ طَرَّبُ دَبَّ دَبَّرَ بَطُّ طَبَّرَ طَبَّ

(2) The baa' of ruq9a script is very similar to that of nasx printing. The writing of initial baa' consists of making a very short vertical stroke, followed by a horizontal stroke which joins baa' to the next letter (the vertical stroke is optional in some contexts and obligatory

in others*). The dot is added underneath the horizontal stroke of baa' after all the basic strokes in the connected sequence have been written. Study the examples below:



Trace the last four examples in each of the above sequences.

*In general, the vertical stroke is obligatory when initial baa' is followed immediately by a straight line or a closed circle (whether the circle is round, oblong, or triangular); thus the vertical stroke is required before siin, ṣiin, faa', waaw, qaaf, ṭaa', ḍaa', ṣaad, ḍaad, and ṣayn.

It will be shown later that initial baa' has a special shape before jiim, Haa', xaa', miim, and medial haa'; it will also be shown that initial baa' and final yaa' combine to produce a special form.

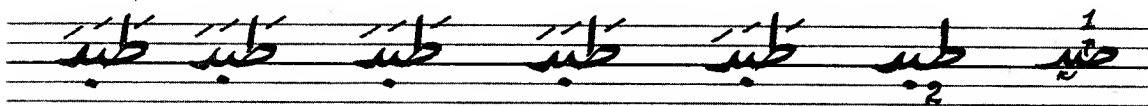
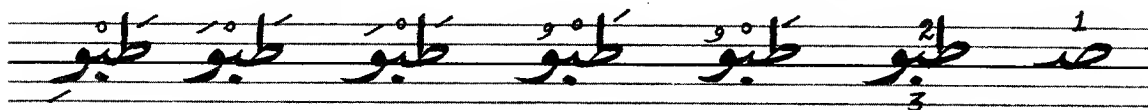
Elsewhere, initial baa' usually occurs without the short vertical stroke but may also occur with it.

Handwritten practice of the letter 'k' on a four-line staff. The first seven 'k's are simple, while the eighth and ninth are more complex, showing different stroke orders and positions. The eighth 'k' has a '3' above it and a '2' below it. The ninth 'k' has a '1' above it.

جُرد بُد بُور بَط بُور و بُدر دِ بُر رِبط زُبد رِبط

[illegible][illegible][illegible]

The vertical stroke of medial baa' is slightly inclined to the right. In this position, a vertical stroke is always obligatory. Trace the last five examples in each of the following sequences:



The initial slanting stroke of medial baa' is called a "tooth".

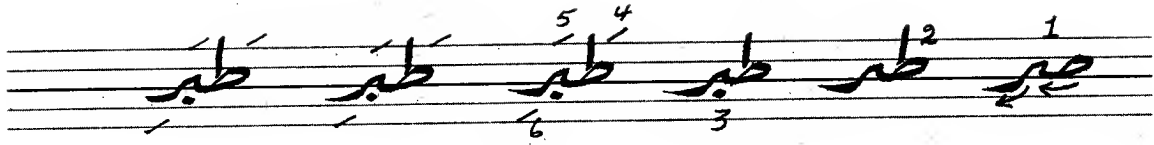
Now copy the above utterances in the set of lines below:



When handwritten baa' occurs medially and precedes either raa' or zaay, its basic stroke has a special shape which rises slightly above the middle line (and which is known as the "bridge" shape); by itself it would look like this ~ , and within a word (such as /ṭabari/) it would appear like this: طبر.* Study the examples

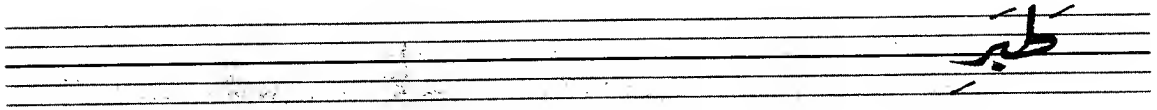
*All letters which are related to baa' have a bridge shape before raa' and zaay. Letters are "related" if they have the same basic stroke.

below:

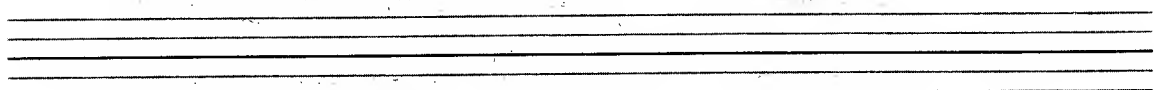
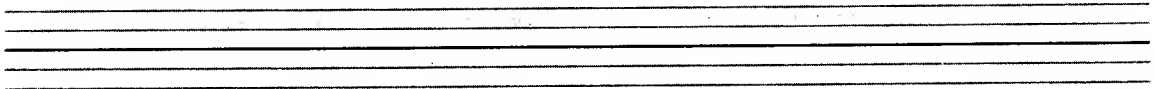
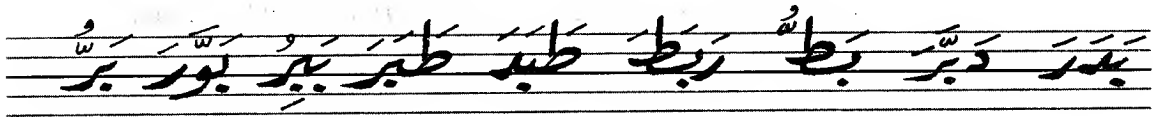


Trace the last three examples of the above sequence.

Now write the word /ṭabari/ seven times in the set of lines below (one example is given):



Copy the following sequence in each set of blank lines given below. Read each utterance aloud as you write it.



Without consulting the preceding materials, write each of the following utterances two times in the lines below: /baṭṭu/, /ṭabari/, /dabbir/, /rabaṭa/, /birru/, /ṭabada/, /bawwara/, /bardu/, /badara/, /zubdu/, and /babiru/.

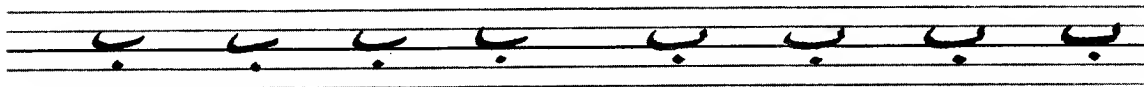
Dictation

Your teacher will dictate to you, in an arbitrary sequence, the following utterances. (Remember the special strokes involved when baa' is joined to ṭaa' or ḍaa' and when medial baa' precedes raa' or zaay):

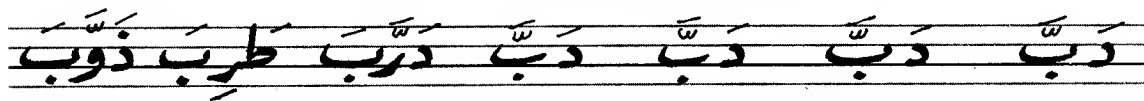
بَدَّ بَرَدَ دَبَّرَ طَبَدَ طَبَّرَ رَنَطَ بَدُوْ بَطَّ طَبَّرَ بَرَّ

When independent, handwritten baa' is similar to its nasx counterpart and presents no special problems. Writing it consists of (1) making a small downward stroke which lands on the middle line (this stroke is optional, and independent baa' often occurs without it), (2) continuing with a horizontal stroke from right to left on the middle line, (3) making an upward curve which does not rise above the +1 line, and (4) placing a dot at the middle of the letter underneath the long horizontal stroke. Final baa' is written in exactly the same way, except that its first

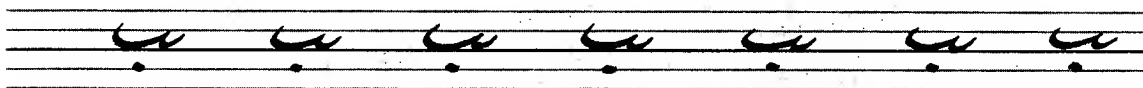
vertical stroke (which is joined to the preceding connector) is slightly inclined to the right; in this position, the vertical stroke is obligatory. Trace each of the following symbols:



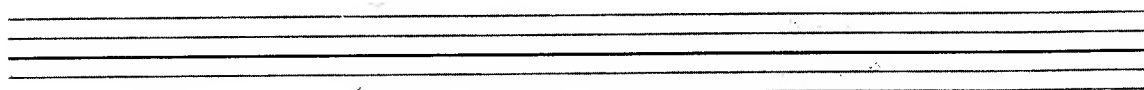
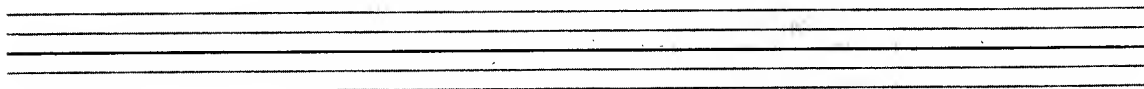
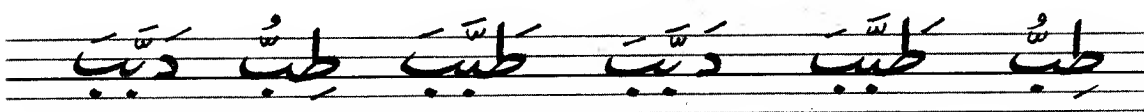
Trace the following utterances:



Now trace the following examples of final baa'.



Copy the following utterances:



Without referring to the preceding materials, write each of the following utterances three times: /ṭibbu/, /ṛabbu/, /ṭariba/, /dabbaba/, /durriba/, /ḍawwaba/, /darbu/, /ṭabbaba/.

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate, in varying sequences, the following utterances:

رَبُّ طَبُّ طَبَّ دَرُّ دَبَّ ذَوَّبَ دَرَّبَ طَرَّبَ

The letter "taa' "

The consonant /t/ is represented in Arabic script by the letter taa'. In nasx printing, the letter is identical in every way to the letter baa' except for the number and placement of dots: whereas baa' has one dot underneath the basic stroke, taa' has two dots above it. The basic strokes for initial, medial, final, and independent taa' are identical to the corresponding basic strokes for baa'.

Initial and medial taa', then, have the forms ت and ت (or ة) respectively.* Below are examples of initial and medial taa':

ت ت ت ت ت

ت ت ت ت ت ة ة ة ة ة

Place a circle around each taa' in the following sequences:

ت ف ن ق ت ي ت ب ة م س ب ن ي ج ب ف ث

ت ف ي ت ة ق ض ت ه خ ق ث ت ة ض ق ث ت ه

Read the following words aloud:

تَوْبَ تَبْرُ رَبَّ تَرْتَبَ وَتَدُ تَوْبَ تَوْتَرُ

بَوْبَ تَوْبَ بَبْرُ بَبْرُ رَبَّ رَبَّ بَرْدُ بَرْدُ

وَرُ وَتَرُ تَطَوَّرَ بِطَوَّرَ

تَوْبَ تَوْبَ تَبَ تَبْرُ تَرَبُ تَرَبَ

رَتَبَ رَتَبَ رُتَبَ رُتَبَ تَرْتَبَ

تَطَوَّرَ وَتَرُ تُرْدُ تُرْدُ تَرْدُ تَرْدُ

*The bridge shape occurs medially before raa' and zaay.

تَرُ بَرَّ بَرَّ بَرَّ تَبُّ بَرَّ
 رَتَبُ رَتَبُ تَرَّ تَبُّ تَرَّ بَرَّ
 تَرَتَّبُ تَبُّ تَرَّ تَرُّ وَتَدُّ تَدَبَّرُ بَرَّ رَتَبُ
 تَوَتَّرُ تَوَتَّرُ وَتَرُّ تَتَّبُ تَوَّبُ تَوَّبُ تَدَبُّ
 تَدَبَّبُ تَتَرَّبُ تَتَرَّبُ تَرَّبُ تَتَرَّبُ

Below are some examples of final and independent taa'.

ت ت ت ت ت ت

Place a circle around each taa' in the following sequence:

ت ب ث ث ق ت ن ث ث ت ب ن ي ت ض ق ت ت ث ت

Read the following words aloud:

تَبَّتْ رَبَّتْ رَبَّتْ بَتَّتْ رَبَّ
 رَتَّبَتْ تَوَّتَتْ تَرَّتْ بَتَّ
 دَبَّتْ وَرَطَّتْ دَرَّبْ دَرَّبَتْ
 بَوَّبَ وَدَّتْ بَدَّتْ بَدَدَتْ بَرَدَتْ طَوَّرْتُ ذَوَّبُ
 زُرْتُ دُبُّ طَرَدْتُ طَرَدْتُ رَدَّتْ رُدَّتْ دَبَّ
 بَزَّتْ دَرَّتْ دَرَّتْ دُرْتُ طَوَّتْ وَرَدَّتْ رَطَّبَ

تَوْبَ تَرِدُ رَتَبَ تَرْتَبَ تَتَرَّبُ بَرُّ زُرَّتِ
وَرَطَتْ رَبَّتْ دَرَبَتْ دَرَّتْ بَرَّتْ وَدَّتْ وَدَّتْ
وَتَدُّ بَرَّ دَبَّتْ رَدَّتْ رُدَّتْ تَوَّبَتْ تَطَوَّرَتْ
تَرَبَّ رَبَّتْ تَوَتَّرَ وَتَرَّ وَرَطَتْ دَبَّتْ دُرَّتْ

ت ت ت ت ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا

تَرْتَبُ تَرَبُّ تَوَدُّ وَتَرَوْنَهُ بِتَوَدُّ تَرَبُّ تَرَبُّ

Place a circle around each θaa' in the following sequences:

ت ت ث ق ف ث ق ي ي ف ز ث ت ث
ب ق ث ي ف ض ث ث ي ث ت ت ت

Read aloud the utterances below:

ثَبَّتْ ثُبَّتْ ثَبَّتْ ثَبَّتْ وَثَبَّ وَثَبَّتْ ثَوَّرْ
ثُرْتُ ثَرْتُ ثَبَّتْ ثَرَّبْ ثَرَّبْ دَثَّرْ رَثَبْ
ثَوْتُ ثَبَّتْ ثَرَّرْ ثَبَّطَ ثَبَّرْ ثَبَّتْ دَثَّرْ
بَثَّ ثَبُّ بَثَّ رَثَّ ثَرْتُ وَرَثَّ ثَرْتُ ثَوَّبْ
رَثَّ ثَبُّ ثَبَّطَ ثَبَّتْ ثَبَّتْ وَرَثَّ
بَثَّ ثُرْتُ ثُرْتُ وَثَبَّ وَثَبَّتْ ثَرَّرْ بَثَّ
دَرَبْ وَرَثَّ ثَبَّتْ طَبَّ ثَوَّرْ ثَرَّرْ ثَبُّ
دَثَّرْ بَثَّ ثَوْتُ وَثَبَّ بَثَّ رَثَّ ثَرَّرْتُ

(2) In ruq9a handwriting, the basic stroke of θaa' is identical to that of baa'. In nasx printing, the θaa' has three dots above the basic stroke; in ruq9a handwriting, however, these three dots are replaced by a small curve whose left half slants downward. Trace the following examples of θaa', then copy them in the blank sets of

Write each of the following utterances without looking at any of the preceding materials: /tibri/, /rattib/, /tawatturu/, /turattibu/, /bitawatturi/, /tabba/, /waddat/, /zurtu/, /warraṭat/, /rabbata/, /durtu/, /dabbat/, /ṭirtu/, and /ḏabbat/.

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate the following utterances in an arbitrary sequence:

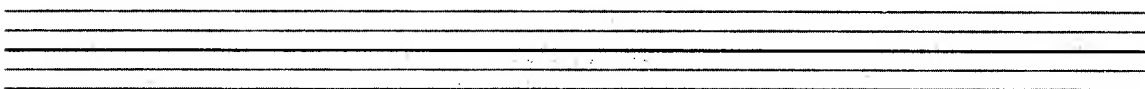
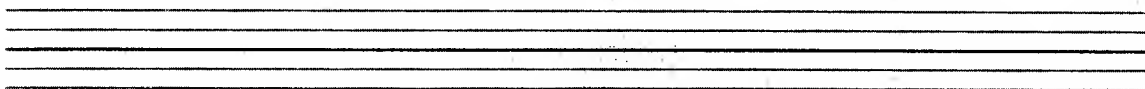
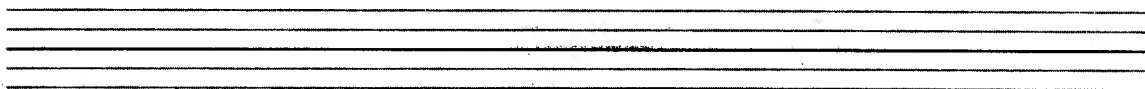
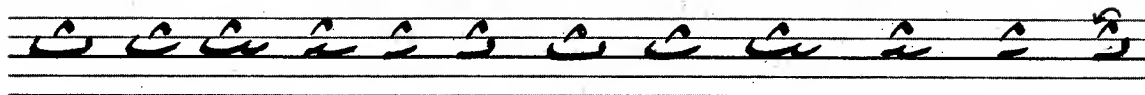
رَتَبَ تَرَبَ تَتَطَوَّرُ تَرُدُّ تَتَرُّ وَتَرُ تَطَوَّرَ
تَرَتَّبَ تَرُدُّ زُرْتُ تَطَوَّرْتُ وَدَّتْ دُرْتُ دَبَّتْ

The letter "θaa' "

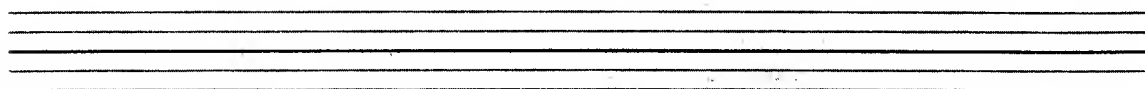
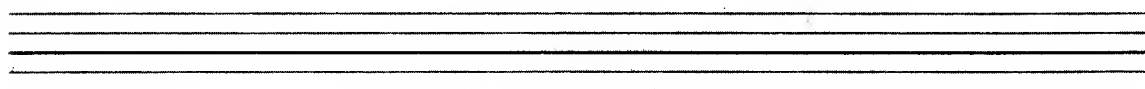
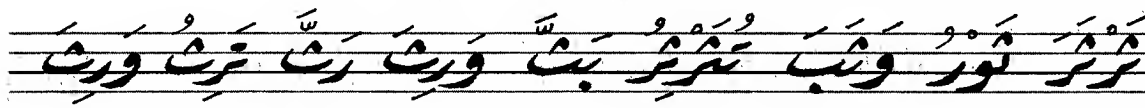
The consonant /θ/ is represented by the connector θaa'. In nasx printing, the basic stroke of θaa' is identical to that of baa' and has three dots above it. The examples below illustrate θaa' in all four positions.

ث ث ث ث

lines.



Copy the utterances below in each blank set of lines,
reading each utterance aloud as you write it:



The symbols for "tanwiin" (nunation)

The Arabic endings /-un/, /-in/, and /-an/ occur on nunated words. The representation of /-un/ consists of two adjacent damma's written above the last consonant symbol; below are some examples (the utterances, in order, are: /tatarun/, /ṭardun/, /baṭṭun/, /badwun/, /wirθun/, /θawrun/, /raddun/, and /ṭarabun/).

تَتَرُّ طَرْدُ بَطُّ بَدُو وَثُّ ثَوُّ رَدُّ طَرَبُّ

The representation of /-in/ consists of two kasra's (one directly below the other), written in conjunction with the last consonant letter.

تَتَرِّ طَرِدِّ بَطِّ بَدُو وَثِّ ثَوِّ رَدِّ طَرَبِّ

The graphical representation of /-an/ is a special problem since it usually involves the occurrence of alif after the last consonant symbol. Because you are not yet familiar with the letter alif, the representation of /-an/ must be briefly postponed.

(2) The symbols and are the same in ruq9a script as in nasx printing. To produce one merely writes two adjacent damma's; to produce he writes two kasra's, one immediately below the other.

Copy the following utterances in the blank lines, reading each utterance aloud as you write it.

تَوَرُّ وَثُّ رَبُّ بَدُو وَثُّ طَرَبُّ بَدُو وَثُّ 1

Now copy the following words in the blank sets of lines:

دَوْرٌ وَرَثٌ رَبٌّ بَدٌّ وَثْبٌ بَطٌّ طَرْزٌ بَدْوٌ وَتَدٌ

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate, in an arbitrary sequence, the following words:

وَتَدٌ وَتَدٌ وَرَثٌ وَرَثٌ رَبٌّ رَبٌّ تَوْتَرٌ تَوْتَرٌ بَطٌّ بَطٌّ

بَدْوٌ بَدْوٌ تَوْرٌ تَوْرٌ دَرَبٌ دَرَبٌ دُبٌّ دُبٌّ ذَرٌّ ذَرٌّ

Now copy the following words in the blank sets of lines:

دَوْرٍ وَرَتْ رَبِّ بَدَّ وَثَبِ بَطِ طَرَزِ بَدَّ وَتَدِ

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate, in an arbitrary sequence, the following words:

وَتَدِ وَرَتْ رَبِّ رَبِّ تَوْتَرُ تَوْتَرُ بَطِ بَطِ

بَدَّ بَدَّ ثَوْرُ ثَوْرُ دَرَبِ دَرَبِ دَبِ دَبِ دَرِ دَرِ

The symbols for "tanwiin" (nunation)

The Arabic endings /-un/, /-in/, and /-an/ occur on nunated words. The representation of /-un/ consists of two adjacent damma's written above the last consonant symbol; below are some examples (the utterances, in order, are: /tatarun/, /ṭardun/, /baṭṭun/, /badwun/, /wirθun/, /θawrun/, /raddun/, and /ṭarabun/).

تَتَرُ طَرْدُ بَطُّ بَدُو وَثُ ثَوُّ رَدُّ طَرَبُ

The representation of /-in/ consists of two kasra's (one directly below the other), written in conjunction with the last consonant letter.

تَتَرِ طَرْدِ بَطِّ بَدُو وَثِ ثَوِّ رَدِّ طَرَبِ

The graphical representation of /-an/ is a special problem since it usually involves the occurrence of alif after the last consonant symbol. Because you are not yet familiar with the letter alif, the representation of /-an/ must be briefly postponed.

(2) The symbols and are the same in ruq9a script as in nasx printing. To produce one merely writes two adjacent damma's; to produce he writes two kasra's, one immediately below the other.

Copy the following utterances in the blank lines, reading each utterance aloud as you write it.

تَوَرُّ وَثُ رَبُّ بَدُو وَثُ طَرَبُ بَدُو وَثُ

The letter "faa" "

(1) The consonant /f/ is represented by the connector faa'. Initial faa' is ف ; medial faa' is the same as initial faa' but is joined from behind, and thus appears as ف. Independent faa' is ف ; final faa' is the same as independent faa' is joined from behind: ف .

Study the following symbols:

f f f f f f f f f f

f f f f f f f f f f

Place a circle around each faa' in the following sequences:

ف ق ز ف ض ف ص ق ض ف و ف و ف ق ع ق ف
ف ف ض م ف ف ط ز ف و ق ف ن م
ف ب ظ ت ف ق ف ن ت ف ط ض ف ق ض
م ف ن و ف ف ف ن ض ف ف ق ز ف ت
ف ت ب ق ن ف ف ف ف م ف

Read aloud the following Arabic words which provide drill on initial faa':

فَرَّ فَرَّ فَرَّ فَرَّ فَرَّ فَرَّ فَرَّ فَرَّ فَرَّ فَرَّ
فَوَتْ فَرَوْ فَزَ فِطَرَ فِطْرُ فِطْرُ فَوْزُ فَوْزُ
رَفَتَرُ رَفَدَ رَفَدَ رَفَدَ رَفَدَ رَفَدَ رَفَدَ رَفَدَ رَفَدَ

Read aloud the following words which provide drill on medial faa':

تَفَرَّدُ تَفَرَّدَ تَفَرُّدُ تَفَرُّدَ تَفَرُّدُ تَفَرُّدَ
تَفَطَّرَ تَفَطَّرَ بَفَطَّرَ بَفَطَّرَ بَفَطَّرَ بَفَطَّرَ
طَفَّتْ طَفَّتْ طَفَّرَ طَفَّرَ طَفَّرَ طَفَّرَ

Read aloud the following words which provide drill on faa' in both initial and medial positions:

فَرَّدَ تَفَرَّدَ فَرَّ تَفَرُّدُ فَوَزَ وَفَدَ تَفِدُ وَفَرَّ
طَفَّتْ فَطَّرَ فَوَزَ بَفَوَزَ طَفَّرَ طَفَّرَ وَفَدَ تَفَرَّدَ فَرَطَ

Read aloud the following words which provide drill on final faa':

تَفَّ تَفَّ طَفَّفَ وَطَّفَ وَطَّفَ تَوَطَّفَ دَبَّبَ
وَطَّفَ وَطَّفَ طَفَّ وَطَّفَ طَفَّفَ تَتَفَّ رَبَّتْ

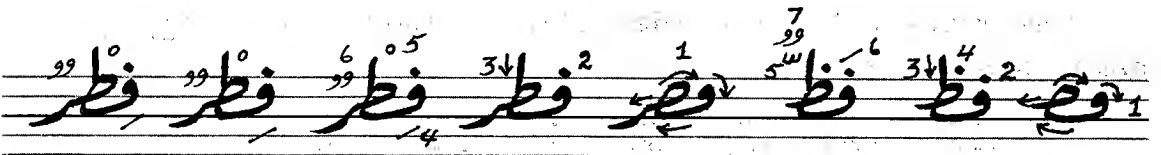
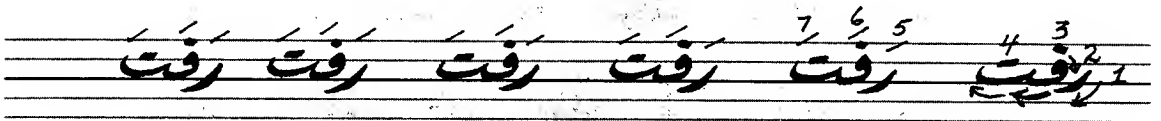
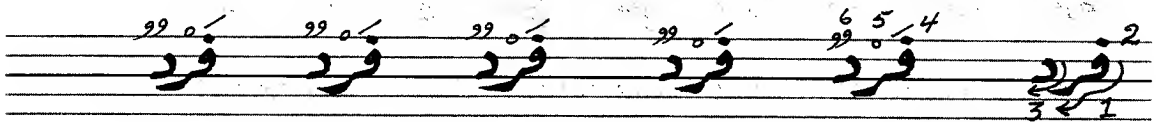
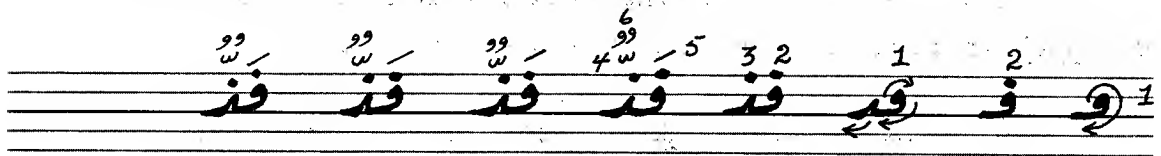
The words below provide drill on independent faa'. Read them aloud.

دَقَّ رَدَّفَ رَقَّ رَقَّ رَقَّ دَقَّ رَفَرَفَ
طَرَفَ طَرَفَ تَطَرَّفَ تَطَرَّفَ تَطَرَّفَ طَرَفَ زَفَّ

Now you should be able to read the following words which illustrate faa' in all positions.

فَرَّدَ فَرَّدَ وَفَرَّ دَفَتَرَ تَفِدُ طَفَّتْ طَفَّرَ بَفَوَزَ وَطَّفَ
تَفَّ طَفَّفَ تَوَطَّفَ طَرَفَ طَرَفَ دَقَّ رَقَّ فَرَّ تَفَتَّتَ
وَطَّفَ طَوَّفَ زَفَّ تَطَرَّفَ رَفَدَ وَفَدَ طَفَّفَ فَطَّرَ فَتَّرَ

(2) The faa' of ruq9a script resembles that of the nasx style. Writing initial faa' consists of making a small, clockwise circle between the middle line and the +1 line (the circle is usually but not necessarily filled in). The stroke which closes the circle continues descending until it rests on the middle line where it turns to the left and joins with the next letter. After the whole connected sequence has been written, a dot is put above the circle of faa'. Study the examples below:



Trace the last three words in each of the above sequences.

Copy the words below in the blank lines, reading each word aloud as you write it.

وَفَرَّ فَرَّ فَرَّ فَرَّ فَرَّ فَرَّ فَرَّ فَرَّ فَرَّ فَرَّ

Medial faa' consists of a small oblong circle which is slightly inclined to the right and which is not filled in. Unlike the initial shape, the medial form of faa' does not have a "neck". Study the examples below.

تَفَدَّ تَفَدَّ تَفَدَّ تَفَدَّ تَفَدَّ تَفَدَّ تَفَدَّ تَفَدَّ تَفَدَّ تَفَدَّ

طَفَّتْ طَفَّتْ طَفَّتْ طَفَّتْ طَفَّتْ طَفَّتْ طَفَّتْ طَفَّتْ طَفَّتْ طَفَّتْ

تَنْظَرُ تَنْظَرُ تَنْظَرُ تَنْظَرُ تَنْظَرُ تَنْظَرُ تَنْظَرُ تَنْظَرُ تَنْظَرُ تَنْظَرُ

Trace the last four words in each of the above sequences.

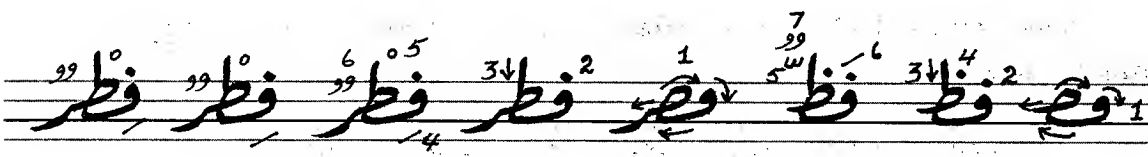
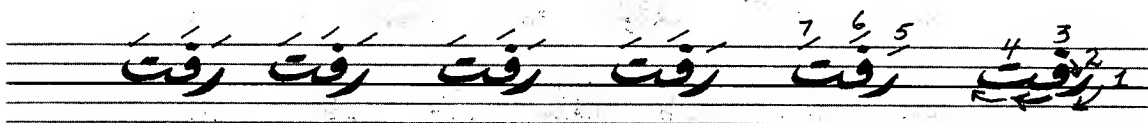
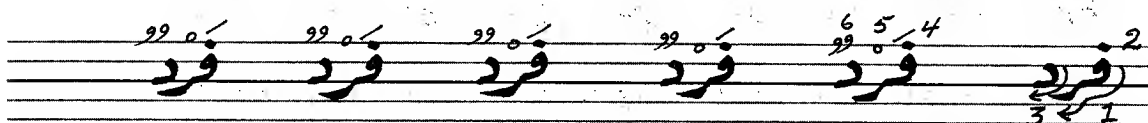
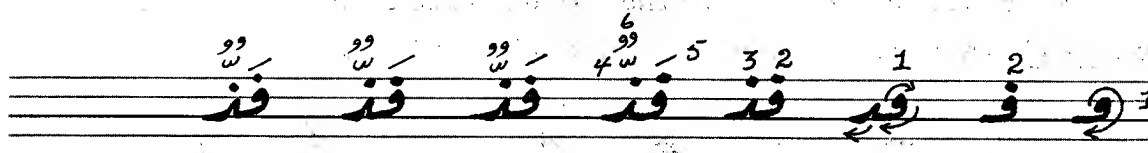
Notice that medial faa' differs from the circle of medial taa' in two respects: the former is smaller and its base rests on the middle line.

Copy the following words in the blank lines:

تَقَرُّ طَفْرٌ تَفْدُ تَقَفَّتْ طَفَّتْ تَفْطَرُ تَفْوَزُ

Write the following words in Arabic script, without looking at the preceding pages: /wafdun/, /tafidu/, /farṣa/, /tafirru/, /fiṭrun/, /bifiṭrin/, /fawzin/, and /ṭafat/.

(2) The faa' of ruq9a script resembles that of the nasx style. Writing initial faa' consists of making a small, clockwise circle between the middle line and the +1 line (the circle is usually but not necessarily filled in). The stroke which closes the circle continues descending until it rests on the middle line where it turns to the left and joins with the next letter. After the whole connected sequence has been written, a dot is put above the circle of faa'. Study the examples below:



Trace the last three words in each of the above sequences.

وَفَرَّ فَرًّا فَظًّا فَظَرَفْدُ فَوَزُّ رَفَتْ وَفَدُ

[illegible]

حَقِيقٌ طَفْتُ طَفْتُ طَفْتُ طَفْتُ طَفْتُ

تَنْظَرُ تَنْظَرُ تَنْظَرُ تَنْظَرُ تَنْظَرُ تَنْظَرُ

64

Notice that medial faa' differs from the circle of medial taa' in two respects: the former is smaller and its base rests on the middle line.

Copy the following words in the blank lines:

تَقَرُّ طَفْرٌ تَفْدُ تَفَّتْ طَفَّتْ تَنْظَرُ بِفَوْزٍ

Write the following words in Arabic script, without looking at the preceding pages: /wafidun/, /tafidu/, /farṣa/, /tafirru/, /fiṭrun/, /bifiṭrin/, /fawzin/, and /ṭafat/.

Notice that medial faa' differs from the circle of medial taa' in two respects: the former is smaller and its base rests on the middle line.

Copy the following words in the blank lines:

تَفَرُّ طَفْرٌ تَفْدُ تَفَّتْ طَفَّتْ تَفْطَرُ تَفْوُزُ

Write the following words in Arabic script, without looking at the preceding pages: /wafdun/, /tafidu/, /farṣa/, /tafirru/, /fiṭrun/, /bifiṭrin/, /fawzin/, and /ṭafat/.

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate, in an arbitrary sequence, the following words.

وَفَدَّ قَرَدٌ بِغَطْرِ ظَفَرٍ طَفَتْ قَطٌّ قَرُوْ رَفَدَ تَوَقَّرَ دَفَّتَرٌ فِطْرٌ

The flourished form is used for both final and independent faa'. For flourished faa', the horizontal line after the circle extends to the left and ends with a small upward stroke. The circle of final faa' is identical to that of medial faa'; on the other hand, the circle of independent faa' is identical to that of initial faa'.

Study the examples below, then trace the last six letters of the first line, the last four words of the second line, and the last five words of the third line.

يَفِي فَفِي فَفِي فَفِي فَفِي فَفِي

يَفِي تَفِي تَفِي وَطَفِي وَطَفِي وَطَفِي وَطَفِي

رَفِي رَفِي رَفِي رَفِي رَفِي رَفِي

Copy the following words in each blank set of lines:

تُفِّ وَطِفَ وَطَفُ طَفَّ طَفَّطَ

Copy the following words in each blank set of lines:

دَفَّ طَرَفَ ظَرَفَ رَفَّ زَفَّ تَرَفَّ تَطَرَّفَ

Study the symbols below.

ك ك ك ك ك

 ك ك ك ك ك

 ك ك ك ك

 ك ك ك ك

Circle each kaaf in the following sequences:

ك ل لا ك ل ل ط ط ل ر لا ك ل ء ك
 ط ل ن ل ك ل ء ك ح ك ن ي ء لا لي ء ك ر
 ك ك ل لا ك ك ح ل ء ك ك ل ك ل ء ك

Read aloud the words of the following exercises:

Exercise 1

كَرُ كَرُ كَرُ كُفْرُ وَكَفَرُ كَتَبَ وَكُتِبَ ذَكَرَ
 كَتَفَ كَتِفُ كَدَّ كَدُّ كَبَدَ كَبَرُ كَبَرُ ذَكَرَ
 كَرَتْ كَرْتُ كَذَبَ كَذِبُ كَطَّ كَطَّرُ كَفَرُ كَفَرُ كَرِبَ

Exercise 2

وَكَبَرُ كَرَرُ كَفَرُ كَذَبَ كَفَّ كَتَبَ كَبَدَ كَتَفَ ذَكَرَ
 كَتَبَ كَتَبْتُ كَرُوْ كَتَفَ كَرَّ كَفَرُ كَتَفَ كَبَرُ وَكَدَّ
 وَكَذَبَ كَدَّ كَبَرُ كَتَبَ كَتِبَ كَدَّرَ وَكَرَّرَ كَفَرُ كَبَ

Exercise 3

تَكَدَّرَ تَكَرَّرَ تَكُرُّ فَكَرَ فَكَدَّ تَكْدُبُ تَكْدِبُ تَكْبُرُ
تَكْبَرُ تَكَبَّرُ تَكْتُبُ تَكْتَبُ يَتَفَكَّرُ يَكْرُ يَكْرُ يَكْرُ تَكْفُ
تَكْبَرْتُ تَكْرَرُ يَكْرُ يَكْرُ تَكْتُبُ تَكَبُّ تَكْبَرُ تَكْتَرُ

Exercise 4

تُكْرُ تُكْدُرُ تُكْرَرُ فُكِّرْتُ تَكَدَّرَ يَكْرُ تَكْتَفُّ تَكْرُ
تُفَكِّرُ تَكُبُّ تَكْطُ تَكْرُرُ تَكْتُبُ تَكْدُبُ تَكْرَرُ
تَكْبُرُ تَكْفُ يَكْفُرُ تَكْتُبُ تَكْتَفُّ تَكْدُبُ كُفِرَ تَكْدُرُ

Exercise 5

فَكَ فَكَّ تَكَ تَكَ يَكْ يَكْ رُبَّكَ رَبَّكَ
رُفَكَ رَفَكَ دَفَكَ دَفَكَ رَبُّكَ دَرَبُكَ دَرَبُكَ
بَطَكَ بَطَكَ دَرَبُكَ دَرَبُكَ كَبَّكَ كَبَّكَ

Exercise 6

رَبُّكَ رَبُّطَكَ رُفَكَ دَرَبْتُكَ كَرَبَكَ
يَكْدُبُكَ كُبُّكَ رُبْتُكَ دَرَبُكَ دَرَبْتُكَ تَفُكَ
رَبُّكَ كَرَبَكَ بَطَكَ كَفَكَ تَكْدَبُكَ كَذَبَكَ

Exercise 7

دَكَ دَكَ تَرَكَ طَرَكَ طَرَكَ طَرَكَ
فَرَكَ بَرَكَ كُفَرَكَ كُفَرَكَ كُفَرَكَ
دُرَكَ وَدَكَ تَرَكَ تَرَكَ كُفَرَكَ كُفَرَكَ

Exercise 8

كُفَرَكَ كُفَرَكَ تَرَكَ كُفَرَكَ بَرَكَ دَفْتَرَكَ
بِكْرَكَ تَرَكَكَ تَطْرُدَكَ رَدَكَ بَدَفْتَرَكَ تَذَكَّرَكَ وَدَكَ
تَتَرَكُ بِكْرَكَ كُفَرَكَ تَكْفَرَكَ طَرَكَ كُفَرَكَ بَوَدَكَ

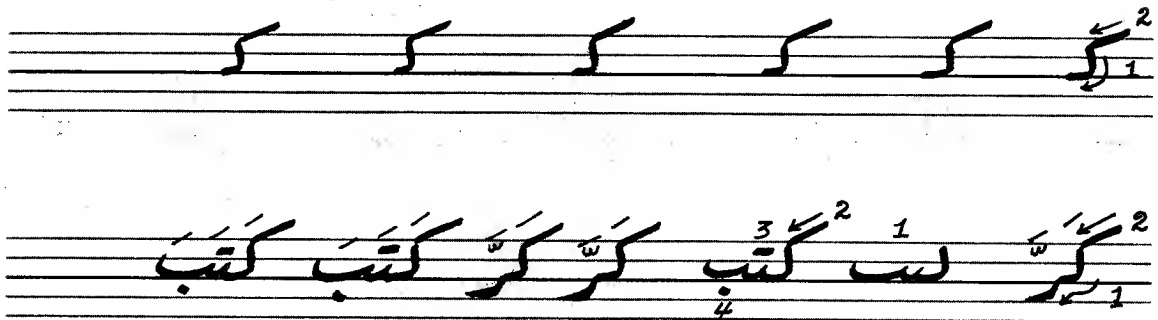
Exercise 9

كَتَبَ تَكْتَبُ فَكَ وَدَكَ تَكْذِبُ رَبُّكَ بَكَّتَكَ
كَفَرُ بِكْرُ كَيْدَكَ تَكْبُرُ دُرُكَ رَفَكَ كَذَّكَ كَرَّ
وَكْتَبَ تَكْبُ دَفْتَرَكَ كَبَطَ طَرَكَ تَكْثُرُ كَذَبَكَ تَذَكَّرُ

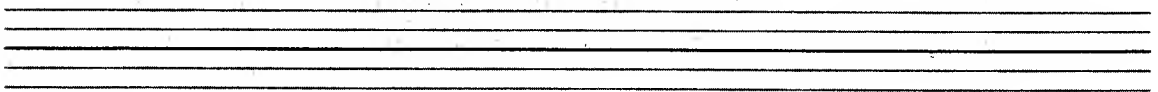
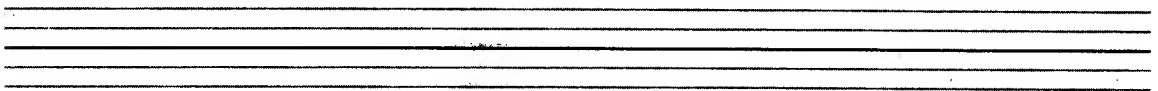
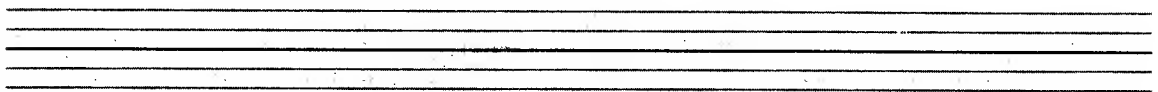
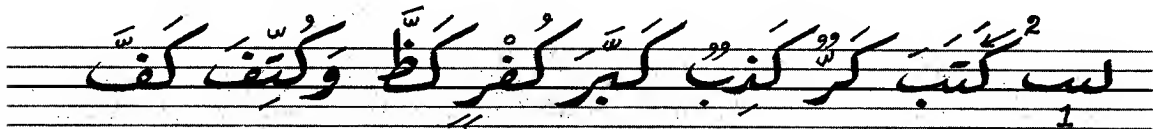
(2) The shapes of kaaf in ruq9a handwriting are considerably different from the corresponding shapes in nasx printing. However, as in nasx printing, the kaaf of ruq9a script has only two forms: The first occurs in initial and medial positions, while the other occurs in final position and independently.

The writing of initial kaaf requires two separate strokes: the first is a vertical line (often slightly inclined to the left) which extends from the +2 line to the middle line and which then continues horizontally to

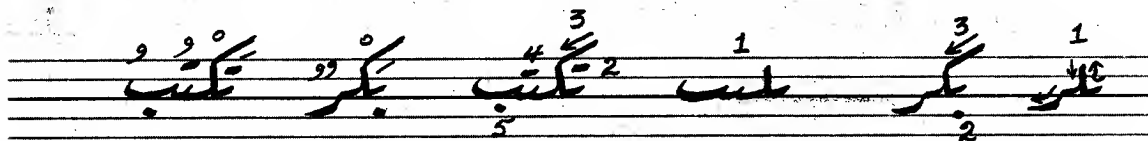
the left until it joins the following letter. After the whole connected sequence has been written, the slanting second stroke is written diagonally in the manner shown below:



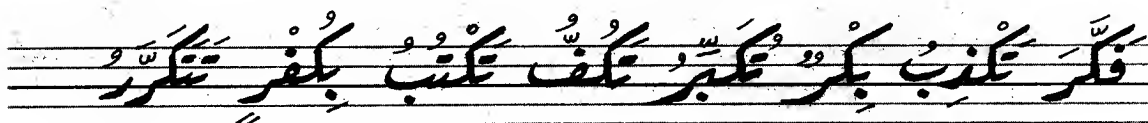
Trace the following examples, then copy them in the blank sets of lines:



Medial kaaf is similar to initial kaaf except that its vertical stroke is usually perpendicular. The vertical stroke is written upward, then traced from top to bottom without lifting the pen from the paper. Study the examples below and trace the last two words of the sequence.



Copy the following sequence in each blank set of lines.



Blank sets of lines for copying practice.

Write each of the following utterances three times in

[Faint, illegible handwriting visible through the paper]

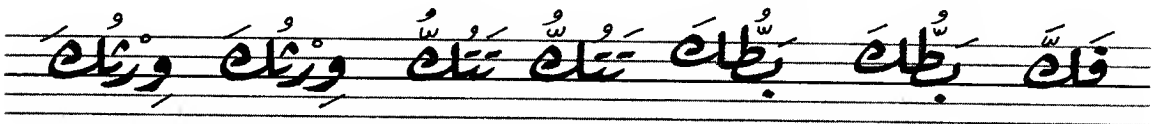
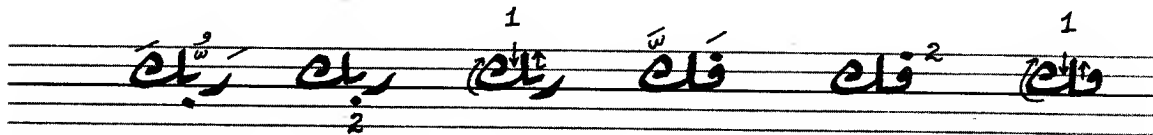
Your teacher will dictate, in an arbitrary sequence, the following words:

بِكَرٍ كَذَبَ كَتَفَ تُكَبِّرُ زَكَّرْتُ تَكْفُفُ تَتَكَرَّرُ كُنِبَ كَطَّطَ
تَكْذِبُ كَفَّ كَبُرَ كَبِيتَ كَبِدُ تَكْبُفُ فَكَّرْتُ تَكْفَفُ كَتِفُ

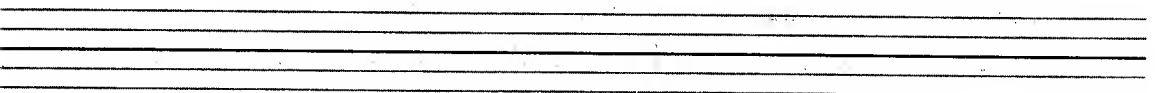
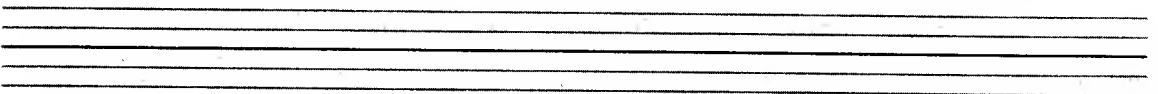
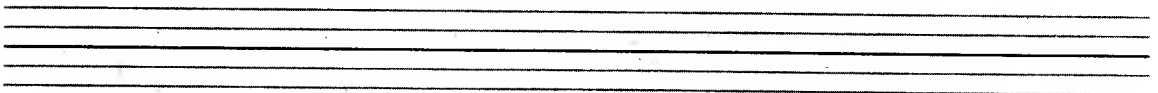
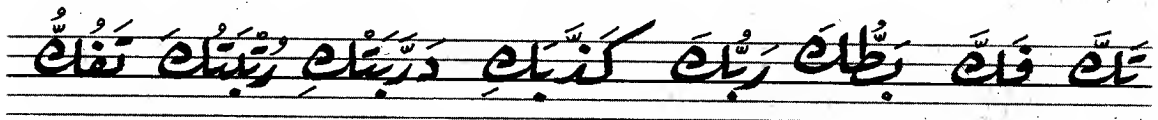
74

ular stroke downward, continues horizontally on the middle line (moving from right to left) and finishes the letter with a small upward curve followed by a clockwise stroke which resembles the letter daal. Independent kaaf begins on the +2 line and then takes on the same flourished form as final kaaf.

Study the following examples which illustrate final kaaf:



Trace the second of the above sequences, then copy the following words in the blank lines.



Trace the following examples of independent kaaf:

كَ دَكَ طَرَكَ طَرَدَكَ كَفَرَكَ

Copy the following words in the blank lines:

بَكَرَكَ دَفَنَكَ كَدَّكَ رَزَكَ طَرَدَكَ عَمَرَكَ كَفَرَكَ

Now write the following utterances in Arabic script:
/tadukku/, /fakka/, /daffatuki/, /tufarriku/, /ṛaddaki/,
/kaḍḍabaka/, /waddiki/, /daftaraka/, /tatruku/, /ruzziki/,

/takka/, /duffuka/, /daṛṛabaki/, and /ṭaradaka/.

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate, in an arbitrary sequence, the following words:

كَرَّ تَكْبُرُ فَكَ وَدُّكَ تَكْدُّ كَيْدٌ كَدُّكَ بَطُّكَ دَرَبُكَ
طَرَدَكَ فَرَكَ تَكْتُبُ كَبَّ كُتِبَ تَتْرُكُ دَفَكَ كَفَرَكَ تَكْبُرَكَ

The letter "alif" as representation of vowel length

The non-connector alif represents vowel length when preceded by a single fatHa.* The letter alif consists

*As will be seen later, two fatHa's and a following alif represent the ending /-an/ which occurs on accusative nunated forms.

(2) The form of alif in ruq9a script is similar to its form in nasx printing. When not preceded by a connector, alif is written as a downward vertical stroke which lands on the middle line. When connected to a preceding letter, alif is a vertical stroke which is written upwards. Study and trace the examples below.

ذَالِهَ ذَالِهَ زَادَ زَادَا بَدَا طَرَدَا زَادَا

بَارَّ بَابَ بَابَ عَارَا طَارَدَا عَارِهَ طَارَ طَارَا

Copy the following sequences in the blank lines:

ذَالِهَ ذَابَ تَوَافَدَ زَارَتْ تَرَالِهَ وَادٍ فَرَا تَوَارَدَ

بَابَ طَارَتْ عَارَا مُجَارِهَ فَارُّ بَارَزَاتُ ظَافِرُ كِتَابَ

Review

(a) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily.

بَابُ بَابٍ كِتَابُ كِتَابٍ
كِتَابٌ وَدُفْتَرٌ كِتَابٌ وَدُفْتَرٌ*
ذَاكَ بَابٌ ، وَذَاكَ كِتَابٌ ، وَذَاكَ دُفْتَرٌ

(b) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily; except for not being fully vocalized, they are the same as the items of exercise (a).

بَابُ بَابٍ كِتَابُ كِتَابٍ
كِتَابٌ وَدُفْتَرٌ كِتَابٌ وَدُفْتَرٌ
ذَاكَ بَابٌ ، وَذَاكَ كِتَابٌ ، وَذَاكَ دُفْتَرٌ

(c) Learn to spell the items of exercise (b). Your teacher will select some of those items for dictation.

The function of "alif" in representing tanwiin

The endings /-un/, /-in/, and /-an/ occur on nunated words. You have already learned that the endings /-un/ and /-in/ are represented respectively by two damma's and two kasra's written in conjunction with the last consonant letter.

The ending /-an/ is represented by two fatHa's which are written over the final consonant letter and which are

*Notice that the conjunction وَ and the following form are always written as one word. The conjunction وَ never occurs at the end of the line without a following form.

usually followed by an alif.* For example, the words /baarid/ 'cold' and /θaabit/ 'firm' would be بَارِدٌ and ثَابِتٌ in the nominative case; in the genitive case they would be بَارِدٍ and ثَابِتٍ; in the accusative case, however, they would be بَارِداً and ثَابِتًا.

Writing an alif after the two fatHa's reflects the pronunciation of ancient Arabs (who developed the writing system): in that pronunciation, the /-an/ of accusative nunated words was usually replaced by /-aa/ before a pause (most modern speakers, on the other hand, retain the suffix /-an/ in that position).

Read aloud the following sequences:

بَارِداً ثَابِتًا طَرِدَا كُفِّرَا بَابًا بَطًّا كُنَّا كُنَّا رُزًّا بَوَّابًا
رَبًّا كَفًّا رَافِدًا قَدًّا رِبَطًا رِبَطًا طَافِرًا بَنَّا وَارِدًا
كَرَبًا رَدًّا رَدًّا تَوَقُّرًا طَارِدًا فَارًّا كُفِّرًا بَدًّا رَتًّا ثَوَّارًا دَقًّا

Copy the following sequences in each blank set of

*The alif does not occur:

- (1) After a taa' marbuuta.
- (2) After a hamza which follows an alif or one whose chair is an alif.
- (3) When /-an/ is a replacement for /-ayun/, /-ayan/, or /-ayin/.

At this point, none of the above exceptions can be discussed or illustrated.

lines:

طَرَدَا ثَابِتًا بَطًّا دَفْتَرًا بَابًا مَدًّا كِتَابًا بَازَارًا

Dictation

Write the following words as your teacher dictates them to you:

بَابًا طَرَدَا ثَوَارًا كَبَدًا ثَابِتًا دَفْتَرًا دَرَبًا

كَدًا بَطًّا بَكْرًا قَارًّا رُزًّا وَدًّا رَبًّا كَفًّا

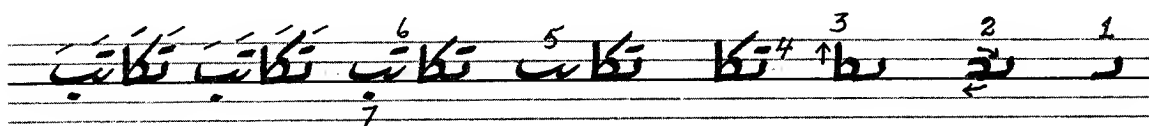
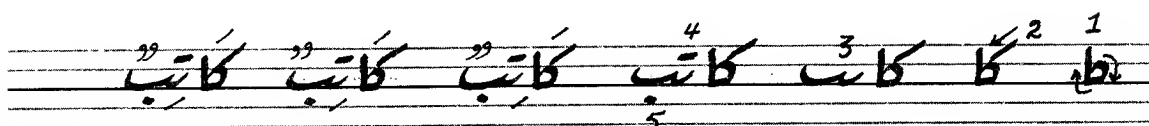
The letter "kaaf" before vertical strokes

In nasx printing, there is nothing unusual about an initial or a medial kaaf which precedes a vertical stroke. Read the examples below.

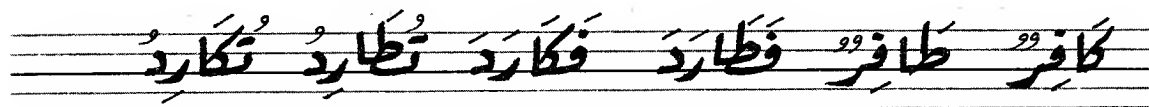
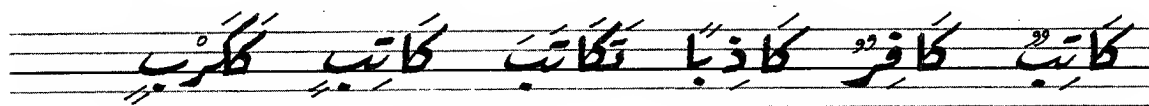
كَاتِبٌ كَافِرٌ طَافِرٌ ظَافِرٌ كَانِبٌ كَارِثٌ طَارِتٌ تَكَاتَبَ تَتَكَاتَبُ فَكَّكَ

كَتَابَ كُتَاتٍ كُفِّرَ كَكْذِبَ كَاتِبٌ تَكَاتَبَ تُطَارِدُ تُكَارِدُ

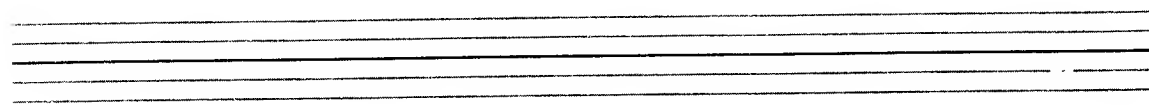
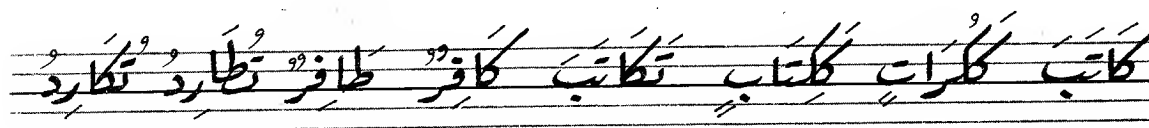
In ruq9a script, however, there is a special way of writing an initial or a medial kaaf which precedes a vertical stroke. In this context, kaaf consists of two distinct parts: the first is a clockwise semi-circle which is closed by the upward vertical stroke of the following letter; the second is a downward slanting line which lands where the top of the semi-circle meets the vertical stroke. Study the examples below.



Study and trace the following sequences:



Copy the following sequence in the blank set of lines:



When the second of two consecutive kaaf's is followed by a vertical stroke, the second kaaf is combined with the vertical stroke in the manner explained above, but the first kaaf does not have a semi-circular stroke.

Study and trace the examples below.

كَاَتَبِ كَاَتَبِ كَاَتَبِ كَاَتَبِ كَاَتَبِ

كَاَفِر كَاَفِر كَاَفِر كَاَفِر كَاَفِر

كَاَذِب كَاَذِب كَاَذِب كَاَذِب كَاَذِب

Copy the above words in the blank sets of lines.

The letter "laam"

(1) The consonant /l/ is represented by a connector called laam. In nasx printing, laam has two shapes: ل and ل. The first shape occurs initially and medially, while the second one occurs finally and independently.

Study the examples below.

J J L J J J L L L J

Laam in initial and medial positions, then, is nothing more than a vertical line followed by a short horizontal line. The flourished form of laam, however, contains a semi-circular stroke at the bottom. The horizontal part of flourished laam is more curved than that of flourished kaaf; besides, the horizontal part of laam falls below the middle line whereas that of kaaf does not. Notice also that flourished laam does not have the symbol ۞ which flourished kaaf has. In the two lines below, place a circle around each laam:

ك ل ن ط ر ك ل ن ك ل ن ك ل ن ك ل ن ك ل ن ك ل ن ك ل ن ك ل ن ك ل ن

Read aloud the following two exercises in which initial laam occurs.

Exercise 1

لَبَّ كَبَّ كَدَّ لَدَّ لَزَّ لَبَّ لَيْتَ لَفَّ كَفَّ لَوْ طَالَبَ
وَلَوْ لَزَبَ لَبَطَ دَلَفَ لَكَ لَكَ وَلَدَ وَكَدَّ زَلَفَ زَلَفًا

Exercise 2

لَبَّ لُبَابٍ لَطُفٍ كَتَبَ دَالِفٍ وَالدَّاءُ وَلَدٌ وَادٍ لَوْتُ
لَوْكَ لُبَّاءُ كِبَارٌ لَكَ طَوَافًا لَيْثُ لَرْبٍ وَلَّتْ كَذَبَ
دَلُّوا لَكَزَ لَوْزًا لَفْظٌ تَالِثٌ لَيْثٌ كَبَتَ لَفْظٌ لَبَّاءُ ذَاكَ دَلَّكَ وَلَّتْ

Medial laam differs from initial laam only in that the former is joined from behind. Read aloud the following two exercises in which medial laam occurs:

Exercise 3

تَلَفَ تَلَفٌ طَلَبَ طَابَ تَلَدُ تَلَدٌ تَلَزُبُ تَلَتْ تَكَبَ بَلَدٍ بَارٍ
فَكْتُ فَلَتْ قَاتَ فَلَوُ فَلَكَ كَلْبٌ تَلَكَ كَلَفَ كَلَفْتُ كَلْبٌ كَلَبَا

Exercise 4

لَبَلَبُ تَلْبَلِبُ تَلَفْظُ تَكَلَّفُ تَتَكَلَّفُ تَلَطَّفُ تَتَلَطَّفُ
تَلَبْتُ تَكَبْتُ تَلَوْتُ تَلَبَزْتُ تَكَبَّرْتُ كَلَبْتُ كَلَّتْ كَلَفْتُ كَأَفُ بَلَبَلْتُ
كَفَفُ تَلَطَّفُ بَلُطَفٍ تَلَبَّثْتُ تَلَبَّثْتُ تَبَلَّوْهُ تَكَوَّرُ تَكَلَّفَ بَلَّتْ بَاتَ

Now read the following four exercises in which final and independent laam occur.

Exercise 5

بَدَ بِكَ تَلَّ طَلَّ ظَلَّ فُلَّ كَلَّ فَكَّ
كَفَلَ كَلَلَ فَكَ كَلَّ نَكَلَ كَفَكَ طَفَلَ بَابِلُ بَابِكُ

Exercise 6

تَكَلَّ طَلَّ زَلَّ بَطَلٌ تَفَلَ بَدَ كَلَّ كُلٌّ نُطِلُ تَتَبَّلُ تَتَكَلَّلُ
تَكِلُ تِلْكَ تُطِلُ تَبَلَّلَ يَكِلُ يَكُلُ رَطُلٌ تَكْفَلُ تَلُّ تَطْلُ تَطْفَلُ

Exercise 7

رَّ بَّ بَدَلْ بَدَلْ طَلَّ طَالَ كَلَّ زَلَّ وَالِ
بَالَ بَاكِ تَدُلُّ تَدُكُ تَذِلُّ ذَاكَ بَدَالِ تَبَدَّلْ

Exercise 8

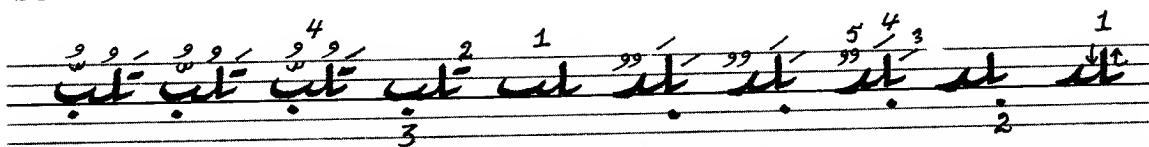
تَالِ تَدُّ زَلَزَلْ تَزَلَزَلْ تَتَزَلَزَلْ دَالَتْ دَالَتْ
زَلَزَالٌ دَلَدَلْ يَبَالٍ بَزَلْ تَرَكَ زَلَّ يَزِلْزَالٍ
دَلَّ دَالٌ وَبَالٍ كَلَّلَ كَالٌ طَوَالٍ دُولٌ

(2) Writing the ruq9a forms of initial and medial laam is easy to learn. Initial laam is a vertical stroke (written downward) which lands on the middle line and then continues horizontally to the left until it joins the following letter. Study then trace the examples below:

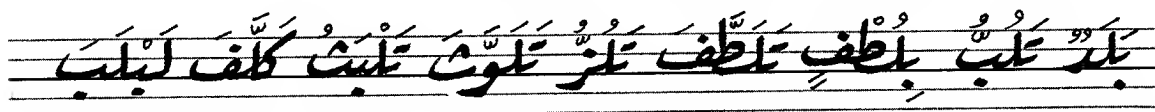
ل ل ل لَبَّ لَبَّ لَفَّ لَفَّ دَلَفَ دَلَفَ

لُطِفٌ لُطِفٌ لِلَّهِ زِلْفٌ وَلَتْ لَوَزٌ لَوْهٌ لَبَطَ

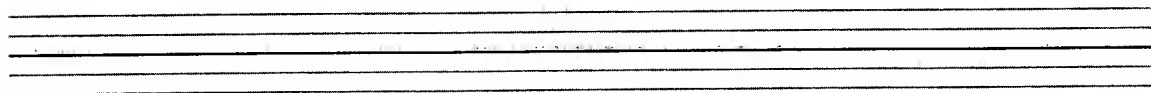
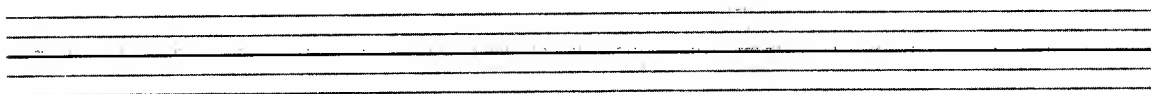
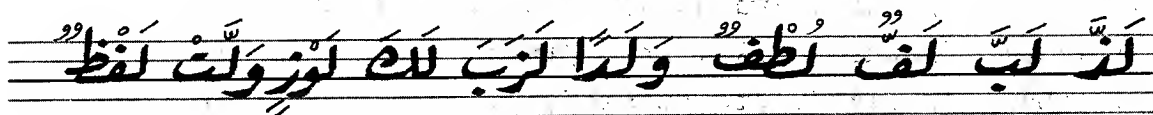
Medial laam begins with an upward vertical stroke which is then traced from top to bottom. Study the examples below.



Trace the following examples:



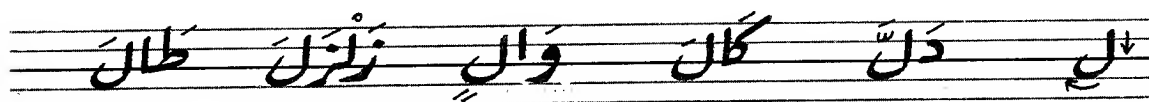
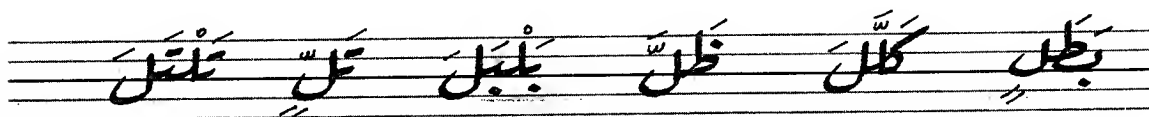
Copy the following sequences in the blank sets of lines.



تَلْبُ لَبْلَبٍ يُظْفِرُ كَلْبٌ تَلْدُهُ تَزْبُ تَلْبُ تَكَلَّفَ تَلْدُ

Write the following words in Arabic script (consult the preceding materials if necessary) /lafḍun/, /falakun/, /biluṭfin/, /laka/, /waladin/, /labba/, /tulawwiθu/, /baladan/, /lawkin/, /kalbun/, /takallafa/, /tilka/, /lablaba/, /wallat/, /talaṭṭafa/, /talzubu/, /labāṭa/, /talidu/, /zalafin/, /lubban/, /lawzin/, and /talaffuḍan/.

I am.



بَيْنَ كُلِّ طَلٍّ زَلٍّ كَفْضٌ بَطْلٌ كَلٌّ بَلْبَلٌ كَالٌ وَالٌ زَلْزَلٌ

Copy the following sequences in the blank sets of lines:

بَنُ كُلِّ بَطْنٍ فَلَفِلٌ بِنَبْلٍ كَفَلٌ عَلَ طُفْلٍ بَكْلٌ ظَلٌّ زَلٌّ

دَلٌّ دَالٌ وَاوٍ طَاوٍ زَنْزَلٌ زَنْزَالٌ كَالٌ بَالٌ تَالٌ ذَالٌ

Write the following words in Arabic script (refer to any of the preceding materials if you need to do so): /bal/, /kaala/, /ṭaala/, /tallun/, /zalalin/, /kullun/, /ṭiflun/, /ḍalla/, /waalin/, /zalzala/, /zilzaalin/, /ḥalla/, /baalun/, /dalla/, /kalalin/, /tatazalzalu/, /likullin/, /tudillu/, /baṭalun/, /ḥakila/, /taalin/, and /ḍillin/.

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate the following words in an arbitrary sequence:

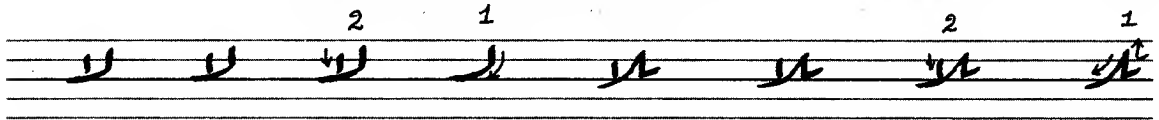
تَلْدُ لَبَّ تَالِ بَدَّ دَلَّ ظَلَّ كُلِّ طِفْلٌ كَلْبٌ لَوْزٌ لَوْ طَلَّ
 بَلْبَلْ كَالْ تُكَلِّفُ لِكُلِّ وَلَدًا وَلَدٌ تَلَوْتُ دَلَدَلْ زَلَزَالَ فَلَكَا تَلَفَّ

The combination "laam-alif"

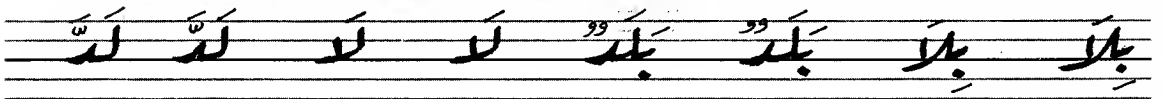
(1) The combination consisting of laam and a following alif has two special shapes in Arabic script: لا (when joined), and لَ (when not joined). Read the following words which contain laam-alif.

بَلَدٍ بَلَاطٍ ظَلًّا تَطْلًا كَلَابٍ بَلَا بَلَدٍ كَلَّا كَلَدٌ
لَا لَانَ لَاثٍ لَاطٍ لَآكٍ دَلَالٍ تَدَلَّى دَلَالًا

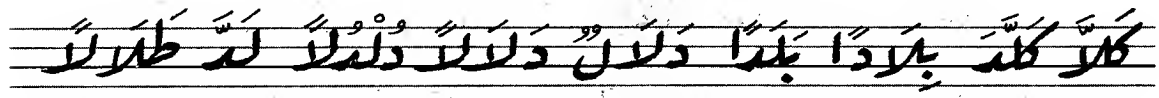
(2) In ruq9a script, the laam-alif is somewhat different from its nasx version. Study the examples below.



Trace the following examples:



Copy the following sequence in the lines below.



Write the following words in Arabic script: /bilaadin/, /tilaalan/, /laazibun/, /zulaalun/, /zulaalan/, /bilaaduka/, /kalaalun/, /wabaalan/.

Review

(a) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily.

دَفْتَرٍ	دَفْتَرًا	دَفْتَرٌ
كِتَابٍ	كِتَابًا	كِتَابٌ
ذَاكَ	تِلْكَ	لَا
بَابٌ	بَابٍ	بَابًا

(b) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily; except for not being fully vocalized, they are identical to what you read in exercise (a).

دَفْتَرٍ	دَفْتَرًا	دَفْتَرٌ
كِتَابٍ	كِتَابًا	كِتَابٌ
ذَاكَ	تِلْكَ	لَا
بَابٌ	بَابٍ	بَابًا

(c) Learn to spell the items of exercise (b). Your teacher will select some of those items for dictation.

The letter "waaw" as representation of vowel length

In addition to representing the consonant /w/, the letter waaw represents vowel length. The waaw represents vowel length if it (a) has no ṣakl,* and (b) follows a damma; otherwise it represents the consonant /w/. Thus /buurun/, /duudun/, and /kuutiba/ are written as follows:

بُورٌ دُودٌ كُوتِبَ

Read aloud the following words in which waaw represents vowel length.

دُورٌ طُولٌ تَزُورُ تُبُوتِ بُورًا تَشُورُ دُودٌ كُوتِبَ
تَلُوكُ تَلُوطُ تَدُورُ تَزُولُ تَطُولُ تَتْلُو تَبْلُو كَتَبُوا

In some of the words below, waaw represents vowel length; in others, waaw represents the consonant /w/. Read the words aloud.

دُورِ دَوِّرَ تَزُورُ تَزَوِّرُ زَوِّرَ زَوِّرَ زَوِّرَ دُودٌ دَوْدَ
طُولٌ طَوِّلَ تَطُولُ تَدُورُ تَزُولُ زُولُ زَوَالِ
كَدَبُوا تَشُورُ تُشَوِّرُ تُوَارِ تُورُ تَتْلُو ثَوْبٌ لَو بُورٌ بَوْرٌ
كُوتِبَ كُوبٌ كَوَّرَ تَكْتَلُوا كُورٌ كُورٌ تَلُوطُ تَدُوبُ

*The term ṣakl (plural: aṣkaal) denotes a short vowel symbol.

nuun:

ن ن ن ن ن ن ن ن ن ن ن ن

In the sequences below, circle each nuun.

ن ن ب ز ن ي ث ف ب ق ف ن ت ت ي
ن ت ق ت ن ب ق ن ت ث د ن ن ث ث ن ن

Read the two exercises below:

Exercise 1

نَدَّ نَدَّ نَدَّرَ نَدَفَ نَدَا نَفَّ نَابَ نَبَذَ نَارُ نُورُ
نَدَبَ نَدَلَ نَظَرَ نَكَبَ بَنَتَ لَنَا بَنَاتٌ بِنْتُ كَدَا
ظَنَّتْ ظَنَّتْ بَنَدُ بُنُو بِنْتًا كَانَتْ بَاتَتْ وَطَنًا فَنَّا

Exercise 2

نَفَتْ نَاطُورُ تَنَازُلُ نَظَفَ نُنَظِفُ نَزَلَ نَنزِلُ نَازِلُ كَنَّا
لِنَكْتُبَ لَزُ نَظَرْتُ تَنَظُرُ نُورٍ تَنَوَّرَ كُنْتُ كُنْزُ نَكَتْ
بَرُّ نَزُورُ فَتَكَ نَزُولُ نَظَرَاتٍ ظَنَنْتُ نَعَدَ نَعَدَ نَنفُذُ

Study the following examples of final and independent nuun.

ن ن ن ن ن ن

Now read the following two exercises:

Exercise 1

لُنْ ظَنُّ طُنُّ كُنْ دَفَنَ دَفْنُ فِطِنَ وَطَنُ
فَتَنَ كَفَنَ بَانَ كَانِ دَنُ دَانَ دَوْنِ كَانُونِ يَدُونِ
تَلَوْنَ كَوْنُ كَوْنِ فَتَنَ ثَانِ ظَنُّ رُكُونُ رَكَنَ لَوْنِ تَلَوْنَ

Exercise 2

كَتَبَنَ كَتَانُ تَكَوْنَ كُنْ طَلَبَنَ كَاتِبَنَ فَاتِنُ
تَلَوْنَ نَزَلَنَ فِطِنَ فَدَانُ فَتَانُ فَرَرَنَ ظَنَنَ
تَبْنُونِ تَكُونُونِ تَنْزِلُونِ تَكُنْ كَفَنُ وَطَنَ بَنُونِ كَانِ

(2) In ruq9a script, the basic strokes of initial and medial nuun are identical to those of initial and medial baa' respectively; nuun differs from baa' in that the former has a suprascript dot instead of a subscript one. Study then trace the following words:

يَدُ ١ نَدَا ٢ نَدَا ٣ نَزَلَ نُورُ نَفَّ نَكَبُ نَمُورُ

كَنَدَا بَنَتْ لَنَا بَنَاتٍ يُنْظَفُ فُنْدَهُ نَزَرَ تَنْزَلُ

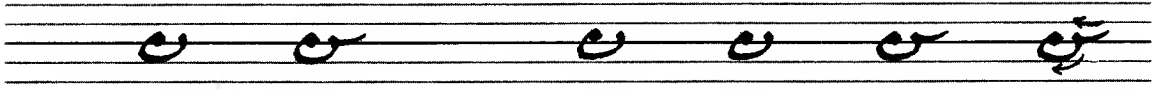
Copy the following words in the blank lines:

نُزُورُ تَنْبِتُ كَانَتْ وَطَنًا لَنَا لِمَنْ نَظَرَ لِكُنْتُ نُتَقَدُّ

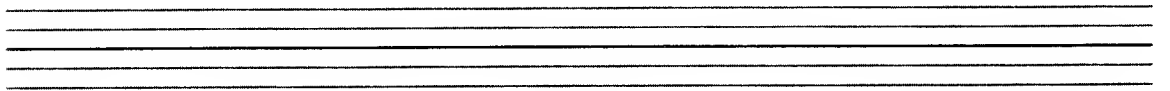
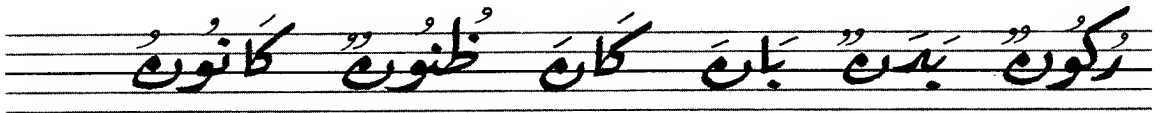
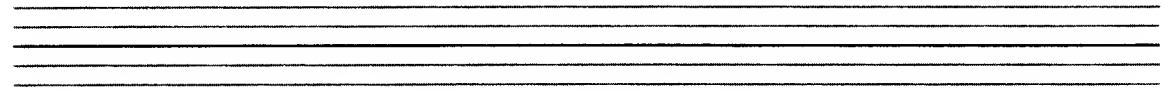
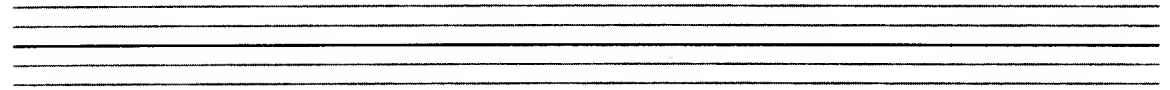
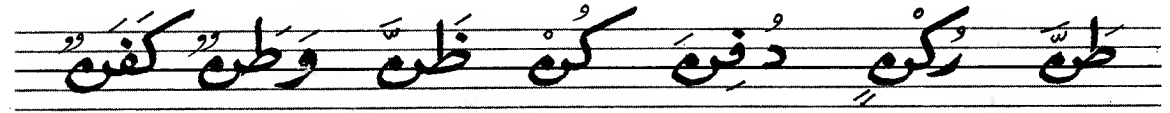
Write the following words in Arabic script: /naḍḍafa/,
/naffa/, /kuntu/, /naaṭuurun/, /nanzilu/, /banaatin/,
/nakaba/, /fannan/, /kanadaa/, /lanaa/, /nantaḍiru/,
/waṭanan/, /nuurin/, and /linara/.

The final and the independent forms of ruq9a nuun
resemble the blade of a sickle and have a dot above the

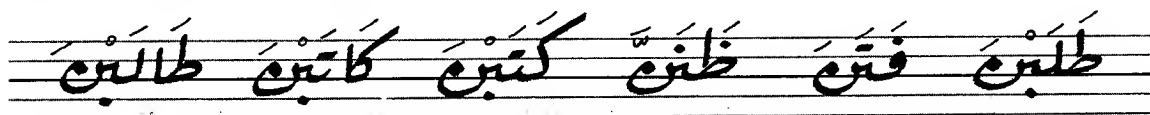
basic stroke. Study then trace the examples below:



Copy the following sequences in the blank lines:



When it precedes a final nuun, the basic stroke of medial baa' (or of any letter related to baa') is usually raised somewhat above the middle line (as happens before raa' and zaay). Trace the following examples:



Copy the above words in the blank lines.

Write the following words in Arabic script: /waṭānin/, /fattaanun/, /ḍanna/, /fannun/, /ḍaana/, /ṯaanin/, /kaana/, /linaraaka/, /kawwana/, /fitanun/, /ṭalabna/, /kattaanun/, /ruknnin/, /furnun/, /banuuna/, /kafanun/, /lan/, /ṭunnun/, /faṭīna/, /katabna/, /dukkaanun/, /badanin/, /tadfinu/, and /ḍunuunin/.

[illegible]

نَدَا بَنَاتُ كُنْ كَانِ لَا نَ نُورُ وَطَنُ نَظَرَ ظَنُّ كَنَدَا
نَكْتُبُ فِتْنُ نَنْظُرُ كَنْزُ نُنْقِذُ نَابَ بَانَ كَانُونُ تَنْظُرُ تَنْزِلُ نَظَفَ

(1) The consonant /q/ is represented by a connector, called qaaf, which has two shapes in nasx printing: ق (in initial and medial positions) and ق (in final position and independently). Notice that initial and medial qaaf are identical to initial and medial faa' respectively, except that qaaf has two suprascript dots instead of one; final and independent qaaf begin with the circle of faa', but end with a flourished stroke similar to that of nuun.

Study the following examples of qaaf:

ق ق ق ق ق ق ق ق

Circle each qaaf in the following sequences:

ق ف ق ن ق ف ق ت ف ق و ق ن ؤ ف ت
ق ق ق ن ن ت ق ف ف ق ق ف ت ق ف ق ف ق ق

Read the following two exercises (the words of the first exercise provide drill on initial qaaf; those of the second exercise provide drill on medial qaaf):

Exercise 1

قَدْ قَرَّ قَرَّ قَطُّ ذَقْنٌ وَفَدَّ قُلُّ فَلَّ قُوتٍ قَالَ
قَدَّرَ قَدَّرَا قُلْنِ قَالَتْ قَبَلْ قَتَلَ قَبِلَ قَابَلَ
قُرْنِ قُرُونِ قَارَنَ قَدَّرَا قَافٍ قَانِ قَلْبًا قَاوَلَ

Exercise 2

لَقَدْ بَقَرَا قَفَرٌ قَفَرٌ تُقْبَلُ نُقْبَلُ قَفَرٌ نُقِرُّ طَبَقَاتٌ
تَشْفُونَ بِقَرْنٍ نَقَلًا نَقَلَ نَنْقُلُ تُنْقَلُ نِقَابَاتٌ نَنْقُبُ
تَغْرِ بِقَرَارٍ تَغْدِرُ تَغْدِرُونَ نُقَارِنُ نَقَبَ نَفَثَ نَقَّبَ

Read the next two exercises (the words of exercise 3 provide drill on final qaaf; those of exercise 4 provide

drill on independent qaaf):

Exercise 3

نَقَّ تَنَقُّ بَقُّ بُنُّ طَبَقُّ تُطَبَّقُ وَافَقَ تُطَلِّقُ
نُوفِقُ تَبَقُّ تَبَنُّ تُطِيقُ فَلَقَ تَلَقَّ تَتَقُّ طَبَقِ
نَشِقُ تَبَقَّ وَثِقَ وَفَقَ تَوَفَّقَ تَلَقَّ طَبَقَّ وَثَنَ

Exercise 4

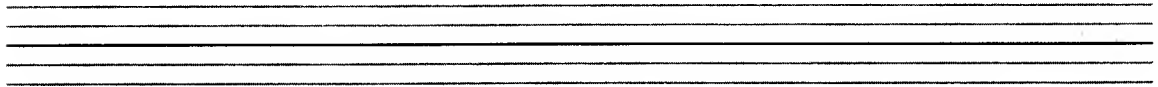
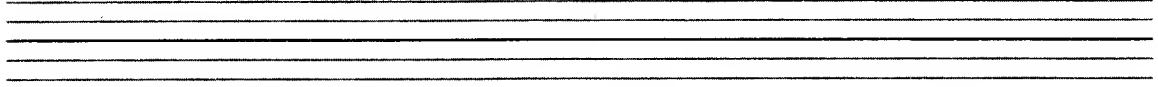
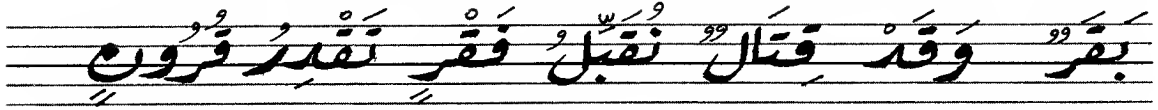
دَقَّ دَنُّ نَدَقُ تَدَقُّ وَثاقِ تَلاقِ وَفاقِ تَواقِ
طَلاقِ رَقَّ رَنُّ رَزَقَ رَزَقُ نَزَرَقُ بَوَقَ تَواقِ
بُوقُ ذَوَقُ لَوْنُ رِفاقِ ذاقِ فاقِ باقِ

(2) In ruq9a script, the basic strokes of initial and medial qaaf are identical to the basic strokes of initial and medial faa' respectively; a horizontal stroke (corresponding to the two dots of qaaf in nasx printing) is placed above the basic stroke of the letter. Trace the following words which have initial and medial qaaf.

قَطَّ قَرِمَ نَقَلَ ثَقِبَ قَبْلَ فَقَدَ قَدَّ نَقَدَا

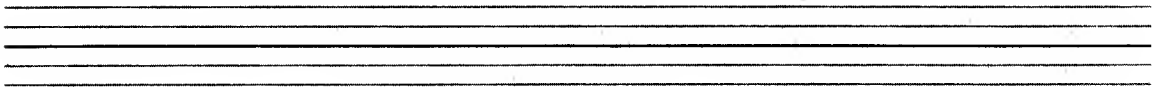
ذَقِمَ قُلُوبُ قَالَ نَقُولُ طَبَقَاتِ قُلْ نَقَلَ

Copy the following sequence in the blank sets of lines:



Write the following words in the lines below:

/nanqulu/, /qaala/, /qabla/, /quutun/, /biqarnin/, /qarra/,
/quluubin/, /qaalibun/.



In ruq9a script, final and independent qaaf consist of
(1) a blocked circle written in a clockwise direction;
(2) a flourished stroke which, like that of nuun, resembles
the blade of a sickle; and (3) a short horizontal stroke
added above the basic part of the letter. Trace the
examples below.

طَبَقٌ وَتَقَ تَتَقُ نَوَافِقُ رِزْقٌ رِفَاقٌ ذَاقَ

Copy the following sequence in each blank set of lines:

نُطَبِّقُ وَنَاقٍ وَتَقَ تَطَابِقُ زُرْقٌ فَلَقٌ رِفَاقٌ

Write the following words in the lines below: /rizqun/,
/nabuqqu/, /wiθaaqun/, /baqqa/, /tuṭliqun/, /waffaqa/,
/dawqin/, and /riqqun/.

Review

(a) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily.

قَوَادًا	قَوَائٍ	قَوَائٍ
طَالِبًا	طَالِبٍ	طَالِبٍ
طَلَّابًا	طَلَّابٍ	طَلَّابٍ

(b) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily; except for not being fully vocalized, they are identical to what you read in exercise (a).

قَوَادًا	قَوَائٍ	قَوَائٍ
طَالِبًا	طَالِبٍ	طَالِبٍ
طَلَّابًا	طَلَّابٍ	طَلَّابٍ

(c) Learn to spell the items of exercise (b). Your teacher will select some of those items for dictation.

The letter "miim"

(1) The consonant /m/ is represented in Arabic script by the connector miim. In nasx printing, there are two shapes for miim. The first shape is that of a small, slightly oblong circle which leans somewhat toward the left; this form occurs initially (م) and medially (م). The second shape is the flourished form, consisting of a similar circle and a long tail; this form occurs in final position (م) and independently (م).

Study the following examples of initial and medial miim, then read the four exercises which follow:

Exercise 1

مَا مَادَا مَرَّ مَدَّ مَدَدَ مَرَّتْ مَالًا مَاتَ مِنْ مَلَّ مَلَاكَ
مِنَّا مَطَّ مُنَدُّ مُزِدٍ مَطَرًا مَزَّقَ مَدَّتْ زَمَنٌ قَامَتْ كَامِلٌ

Exercise 2

دَامَتْ مَلَكَ مَالِكٌ مَلَكٌ مُلَاكٌ مَاكِرٌ مَوَّلَ مَرْكَزٍ مَطَارٍ مَكَانًا
مَوَادَّ مَطَاطٌ مَكَتْ زَمَانٌ دُمْتُ مَثَلٌ مَقَّتْ مَلَّ مَلَأَ
مَطَرًا مُدْنَا مَوْتُ مَلَاكَ مَدِدٍ مِنْ مَن كَامِلًا مَرَاكِزُ مَتَّ

Exercise 3

لِمَا بِمَا مِمَّا مِمَّنْ كَمَا نِمْتُ مَعَاتٍ قَمَرٌ مَرَّرٌ نِمْرًا
نَمْرٌ تَمَرٌ لُمْتُ نِمْتُ نَمَطٌ كَمَالٌ كَمَلٌ تَمَرٌ تَنُمُو

Now study the following examples of final and independent miim, then read the four exercises which follow:

كَمْ أَفَمُّ بَيْكُمُ ثُمَّ تَمَّ لَمْ نَمْ قُمْ لَكُمْ لَكُمْ
تَلَمْ فَلَمْ لَطَمْ فَلَمْ ظَلَمْ تَتَّمُّ قِمِّ تَعَمَّمْ

Case 2

بِكُمْ فَلَمْ وَلَمْ مِنْكُمْ بِكُمْ مَطْمُ قُمْ فَلَمْ رَقْمٌ

Copy the following sequence in each blank set of lines:

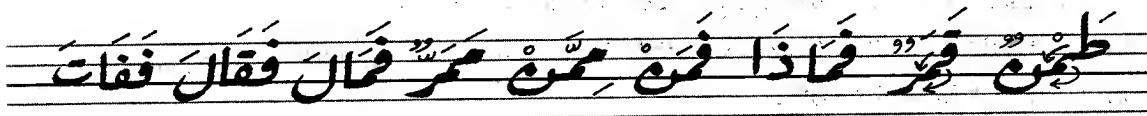
مَرْزُقَانِي مَطْرًا مَلِي مَلِكًا دَمْتُ مَدْرِي مُنْذُ مَاتَ

Write the following words in Arabic script: /muftin/, /maṭaarun/, /markazan/, /dumta/, /kaamilan/, /min/, /man/, /maa/, /maadaa/, /makaanun/, /mawtin/, /miṭla/, /mudunan/, /qaamat/, /milkun/, /malikan/, /maṭṭa/, /maṭarin/, /makaṭa/, /makaṭaa/, and /mullaakin/.

The writing of miim in medial position involves a principle which we have already encountered: namely, that certain letters* cause all preceding connectors to gain a rise in level.

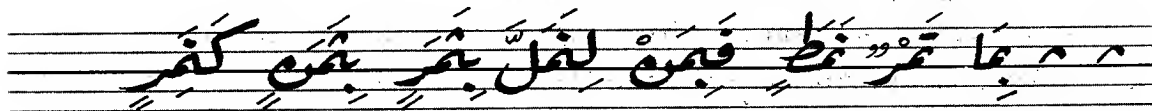
When writing a medial miim, one ends the joining line with a descending stroke which does not reach the middle line; without raising the pen from the paper, he then writes the blocked circle of miim in a clockwise direction, making sure that the base of the circle rests on the middle line. The stroke which closes the circle of miim continues horizontally to the left until it reaches the point where the next letter begins.

Trace the following examples:



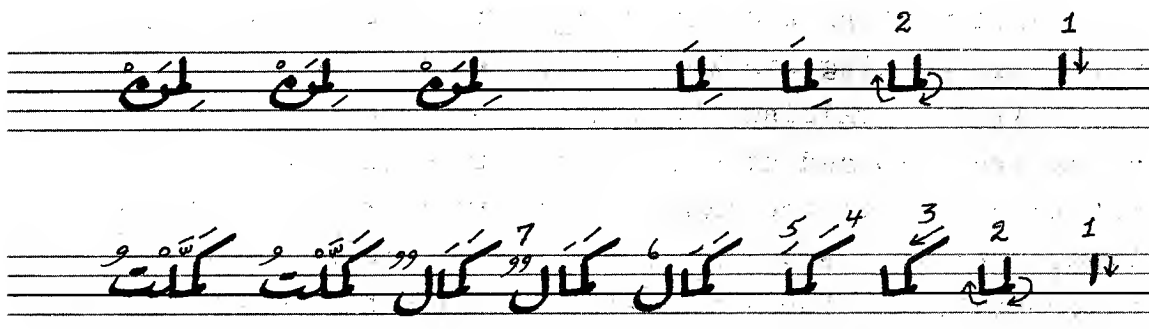
Care must be exercised in order not to produce a tooth when making the descending stroke of the joining line; thus طَمِيمٌ is acceptable, but طَمِيمٌ is not.

When it precedes miim, the basic stroke of baa' (or of any letter related to baa') consists of a small downward curve. Study then trace the following examples.

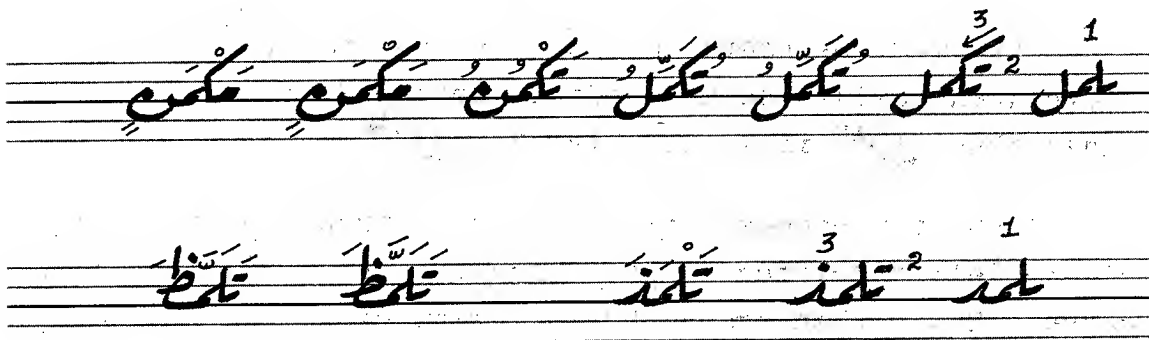


*Those are called the "descending letters"; they are jiim, Haa', xaa', raa', zaay, miim, medial haa', and final yaa'. Notice that jiim, Haa', and xaa' are "related" letters; similarly, raa' and zaay are related letters.

Medial miim is written directly underneath the preceding letter when that letter is an initial laam or an initial kaaf. Study then trace the following examples:

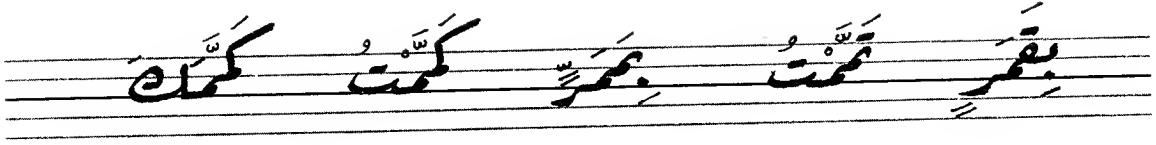


The stroke which joins medial kaaf or medial laam to a following miim will be called a "branch"; the joining stroke branches out from the middle of the preceding vertical line, and miim is then written to the left rather than underneath the letter it follows. Study then trace the examples below.

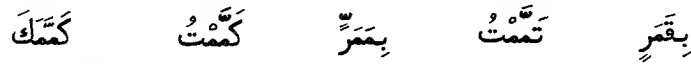


The miim cannot be written below the middle line; consequently, a letter which precedes medial miim is usually raised above the middle line. Sometimes several letters must be written one below the other in a series, resulting in a sequence with a 45° slant. In such cases, one must write the first letter quite high above the middle line to make sure that the last letter of the series ends up on the middle line. Study then trace the examples which

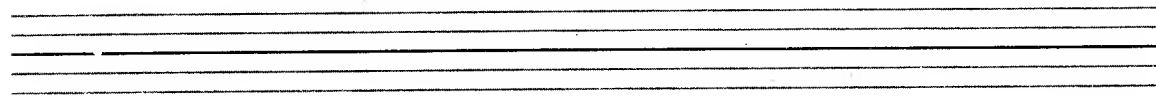
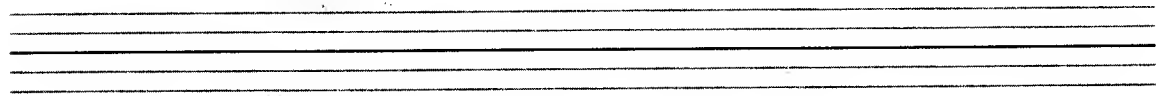
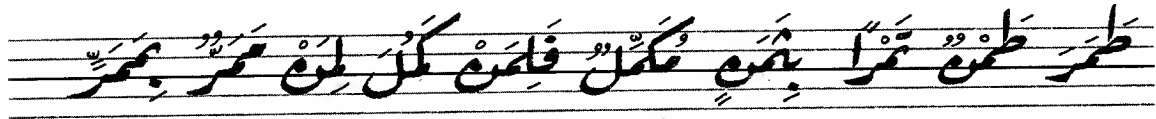
are given below:



Compare the above ruq9a shapes with the corresponding nasx shapes:

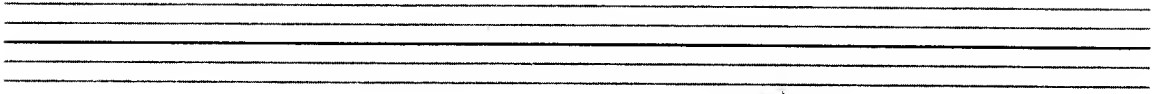


Copy the following words in each blank set of lines:



Write the following words in Arabic script: /lammaa/, /falimaa/, /θamarun/, /biθamarin/, /qamarun/, /biqamarin/, /mukammilan/, /tammamat/, /famaadaa/, /kammamaki/,

/biθamanin/, /namiran/, /kamaa/, /mumaθθilan/, and
/talmada/.



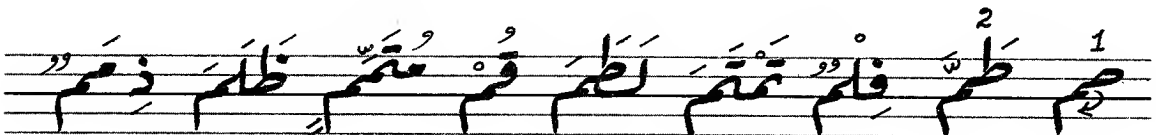
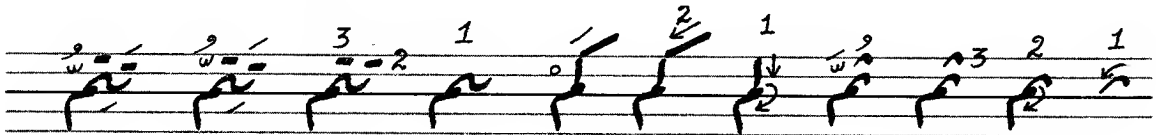
Dictation

Your teacher will dictate the following words in whatever sequence he chooses:

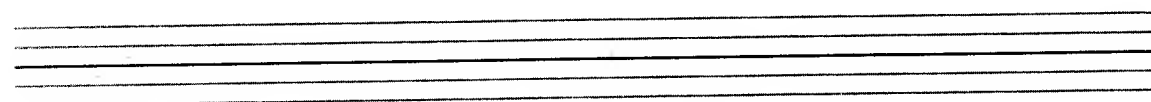
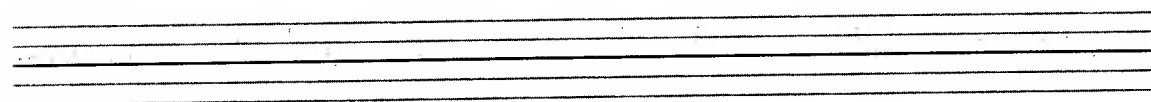
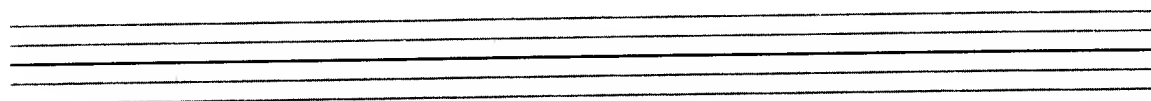
مَرَّ فَلَمَّا ذَا شَرَّ بَتَمَّرَ مُكَمَّلٌ مَكَامٍ مَدَّتْ

مَثَلٌ لَمَّا قَمَرٍ مُقَمَّرٌ مَكَانًا تَمَتَّتْ مُمَكِّنٌ

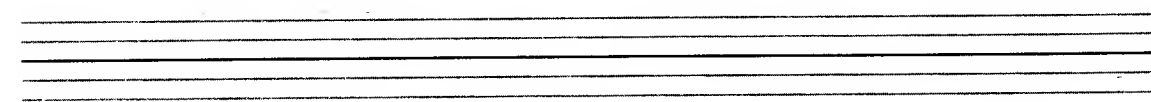
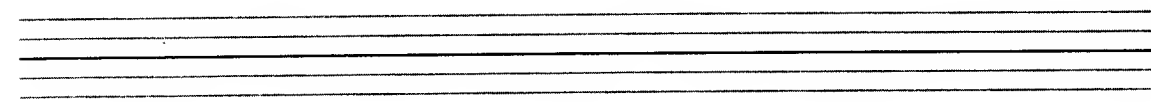
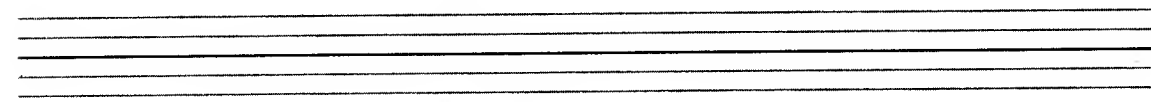
Final miim is essentially the same as medial miim except that it ends with a long downward stroke. All the principles which govern the joining of medial miim to preceding letters apply in the case of final miim. Study the examples below.



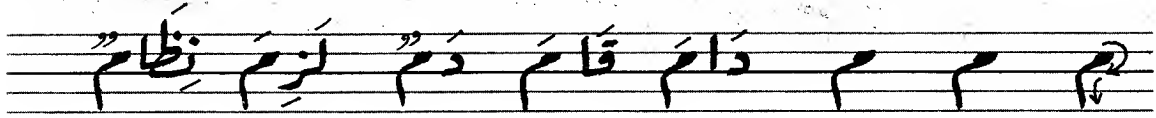
Copy the following words in the blank lines:



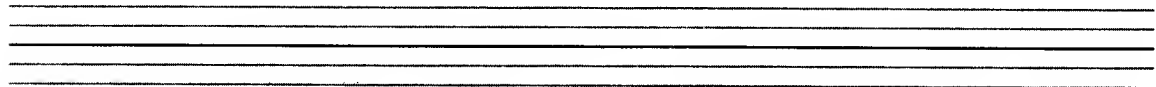
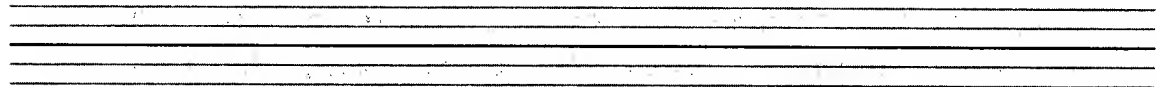
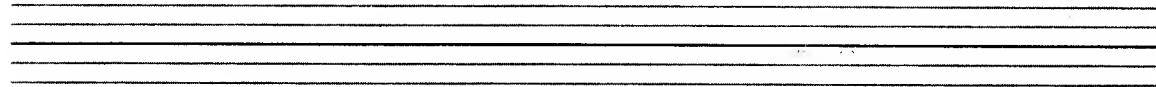
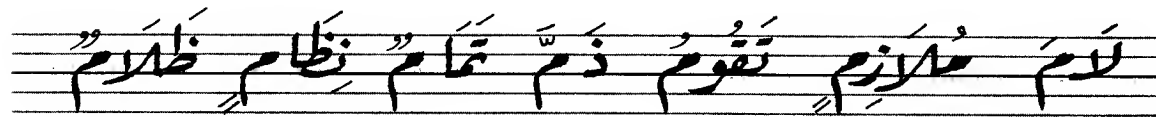
Write the following words in Arabic script: /ḍaalimun/, /filmin/, /qum/, /raqmun/, /tammama/, /mutammimum/, /nam/, /lam/, /ṯumma/, /kam/, /faṭama/, /ṭamaaṭimu/, /kammama/, and /famun/.



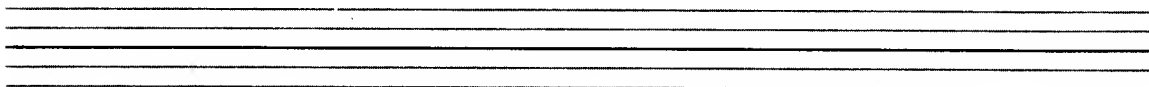
The blocked circle of independent miim is identical to initial miim. The long, downward stroke is the same as that of final miim. Study the examples below:



Copy the following words in the blank lines:



Write the following words in the blank set of lines:
/laazimun/, /qaama/, /taduumu/, /tanaamu/, /damun/, and
/malmuumum/.



The following words contain final miim and miim in isolation. Your teacher will dictate them in an arbitrary sequence:

The letter "Haa" "

4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4

خ ح ع ج خ ح د ص غ ج ض د ج ح ض ص ه
م خ ح خ ل ح ض ص ح ح ع د ح غ ه ض ح خ

Exercise 1

120

Exercise 2

حَدَدَ حُرُوفٍ حَمَالٍ حُكُومَاتٍ حَكَمَ حُقُوقًا حَثَّ حَقَّقَ
حُلُولًا حَرَقَ حَفَلَاتٍ حَارَبَ حَلَّلَ حَنَكَ حِمَارًا حَظَّ حَارَّ
حَمَلَاتٍ حَالًا حَقَّقَ حَلَالَ حَكَمْتَ وَحَلَّا رَحَّبَ حَلَبَ كَا حِلَّ

Exercise 3

بَحَثَ بَحَثٌ لَحْمٌ فَعِمَ بَحْرًا بَحَارٍ لِحَقٍّ مَحَلٌّ تَحَلُّ لَحْنٌ
تَحَدَّثَ تَحَدَّدَ تَمَدَّدَ مَحُوٌّ مَحْنٌ نَحَلُّ بَحَثَ مُحَارِبٌ مُحَدَّدٌ

Exercise 4

تَحَمَّلَ تَحَقَّقَ مُحَقِّقٍ مَحَاكِمُ مَحْكُومًا مَحَطَّاتٌ مَتَحَفٌ قَعَطَانَ
مُحَلِّلٌ مَحْرُومًا مَحْبُوبٍ مُحَرَّمٌ مُحِبًّا لُحُومٌ تَحْتَفِلُ تُحِبُّ لَحْنٌ
تَتَحَدَّثُ مُحَادَثَاتٍ مُحَارِبُونَ تَحَرَّقَ مَحْدُودٍ فَحَمًا مُحَمَّدٌ

Study the following examples of final and independent
Haa':

ح ح ح ح ح ح

In the sequences below, circle each Haa'.

ح ح ي ع غ ح ن خ خ ج م غ ح ح غ غ ح ح
ح خ ع ح ي غ خ م ج ح ح ع ح ن ع غ ح ح

Read the following four exercises:

Exercise 5

لَحَّ قَحَّ رُحَّ فَتَحَ لَمَحَ بَطَحَ نَطَحَ بَلَحَّ لَفَحَ لَقَّحَ نَبَحَ
مَنَحَ مُنَحَ نَفَحَ وَقَحَّ كَافَحَ رِبَحَ فَاتَحَ لَافَحَ كَبَحَ

Exercise 6

كَابَحَ تُكَافِحُ مُكَافِحُ مَنَحَ رَابِحُ تَفْتَحُ تَفْتَحُ فَاتِحُ
لَامِحُ طَحَطَحَ تَنْبِطَحُ تُطْلِقُ قَنَحُ مَلَحَ كَالِحُ كَوَّلِحُ
تُغْنِحُ تَرْبِحُ مُغْلِحُ مُلَحُ بَطَحَ مَنَحَ بَحَ ذَبَحَ

Exercise 7

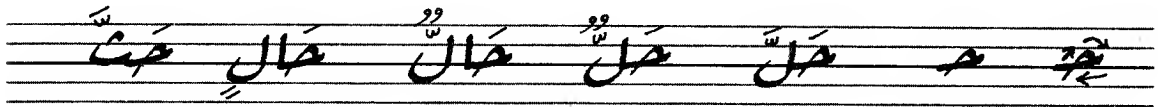
لَاَحَ بَاَحَ طَرَحَ فَرَحَ رَوَّحَ مَرَحَ فَرِحَ مَرَحَ مَرَّاحُ
نَاَحَ تَتَّاحُ مَرَحَ مَانِحُ كَذَحَ فَادِحُ فَرِحَ نَرُوُحُ

Exercise 8

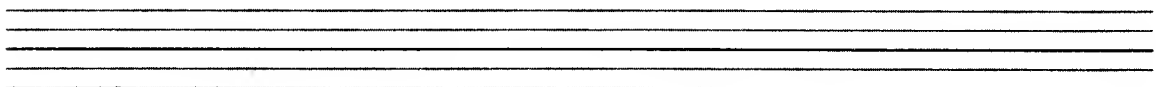
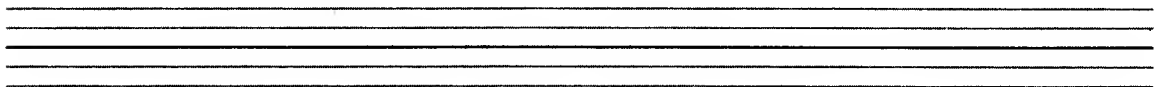
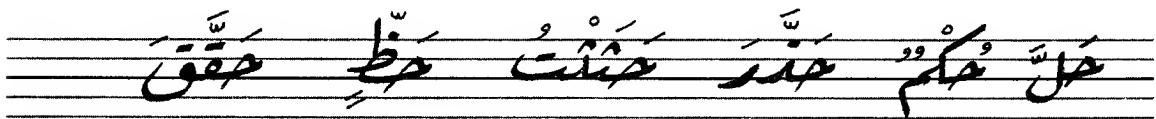
فَتَّاحٌ مِفْتَاحٌ فَلَاحٌ قُرَاحٌ نَنَحٌ مَطَرٌ مَطَارٌ قَوَارِحُ
لَوْحٌ تَلُوحٌ مُبَاحٌ تَطَرِحُ نُوَاحٌ مَانِحٌ كَارِحٌ طَارِحٌ تَعَنُ
طَرَحَ كِفَاحٌ مَرَايُ تَكْبِحُ نَعَرُ تَبُوعُ رُوحٌ مُرَتَّاحٌ لَاحَ

(2) The shape of initial Haa' in ruq9a script is different from the corresponding shape in nasx printing. The ruq9a shape is fully closed, whereas the nasx counterpart is open on its left side.

When not followed by a descending letter, initial Haa' has the shape illustrated below:

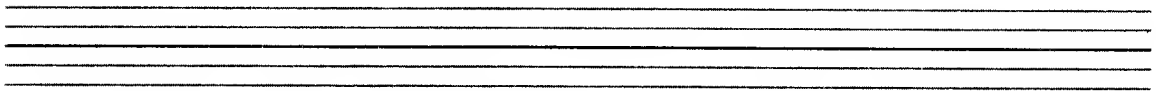
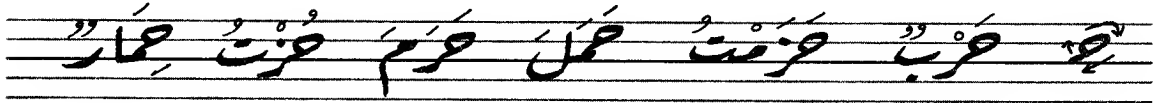


Copy the following words in the blank lines:

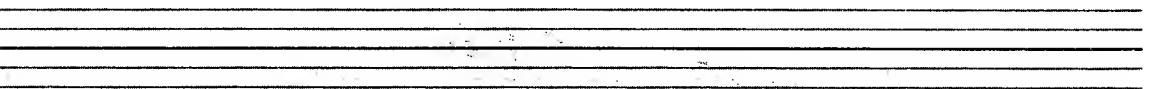
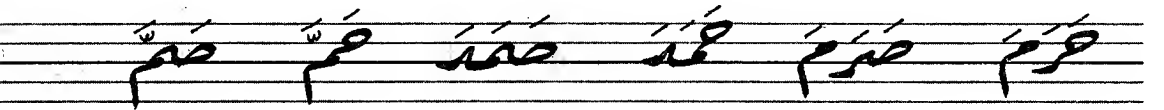


When it precedes a descending letter, initial Haa' consists of: (a) a stroke which begins on the middle line, slants upward to the left, then curves to the right; (b) a stroke which slants downward to close the shape, forming with the first stroke an acute angle on the right and an obtuse angle on the left.

Study the examples below, then copy them in the blank lines.



In contrast to the initial Haa' described above, initial saad consists of (a) a stroke which slants upward to the right then curves downward, and (b) a horizontal stroke which forms with the first stroke an oblong circle. Study the following pairs, then copy them in the blank lines.



Write the following words in the blank lines:

/Haalun/, /Hamala/, /Harbin/, /Haarabat/, /Hawla/,
/Hukuumaatun/, /Hafiḍa/, /Hiqdun/, Haddaṭa/, /Haamilan/,
/Huquuqin/, /Haṭṭat/, /Harqun/, /Hurūufin/, /Hakkamat/,
/Huḍifa/, /Haṭṭa/, /Haḍḍan/, /Harfun/, /Haalaatin/,
/waHlun/, /Halabu/, /raHHabnaa/, /raaHilan/, and /Hibrun/.

Medial Haa' is an angular shape which is written under the joining line in the manner shown below. Unlike medial miim, it is not closed. Study the following words:

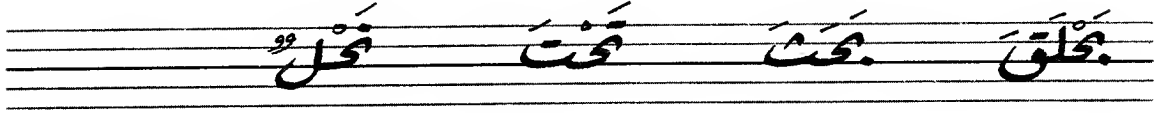
فَخْلٌ مُحَمَّدًا مُمَدَّدًا قَطَانٌ

Like miim, Haa' is a descending letter. This fact explains the following observations:

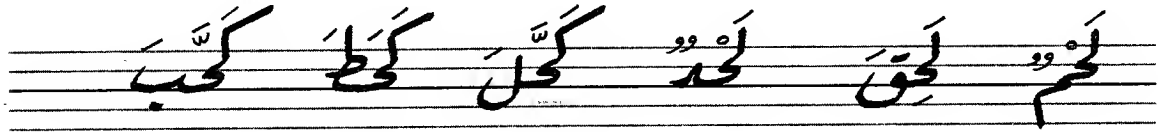
(1) Medial Haa' is written below the preceding letter:

فَخْلٌ مُحَمَّدٌ قَطَانٌ قُفٌّ طَحْنٌ

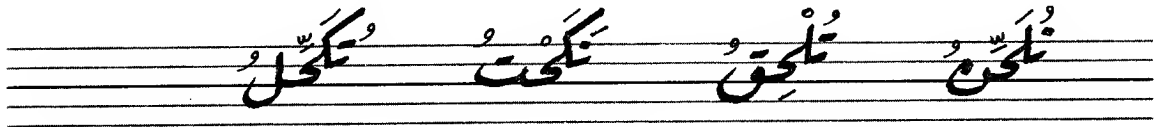
(2) The letter baa' and the letters related to it assume before Haa' the forms which they have before miim:



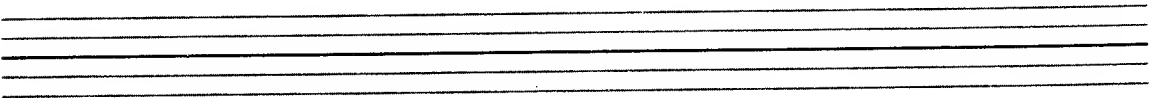
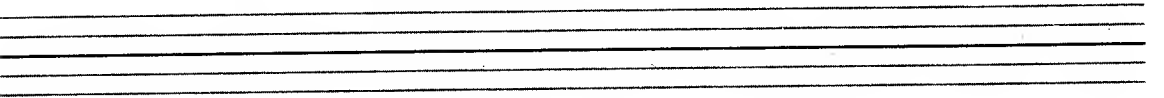
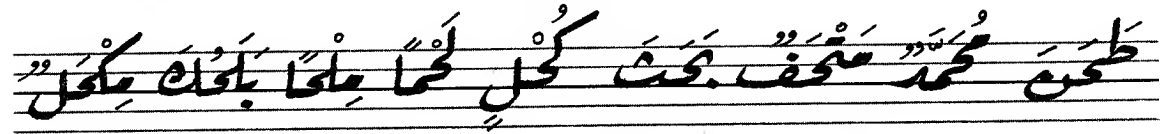
(3) Medial Haa' is written directly underneath an initial laam or an initial kaaf:



(4) A medial laam or a medial kaaf is joined to a following Haa' by a branch:



Copy the following words in the blank sets of lines:



Write the following words in the blank lines:

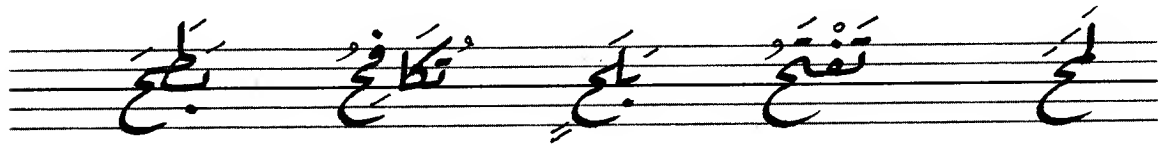
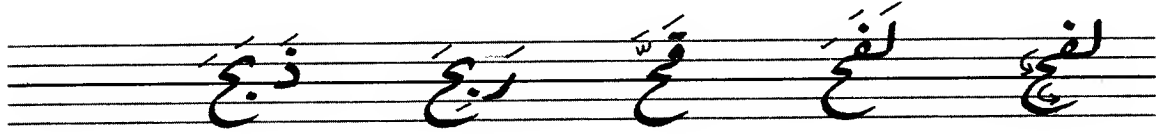
/muHarṛamun/, /maHṛuuman/, /muHaaribin/, /maHaṭṭaatin/,
/kaHHalat/, /baHtun/, /baHaṭa/, /luHuumin/, /miHanun/,
/qaHṭaanu/, /muHibbin/, /taHaddaṭa/, /maHaakimu/,
/muHakkamun/, /naHliq/, /taHlumu/, /taHaqqaqat/,
/laHnun/, /talHaḍu/, and /nalHabu/.

Dictation

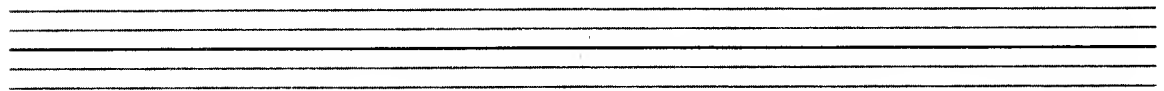
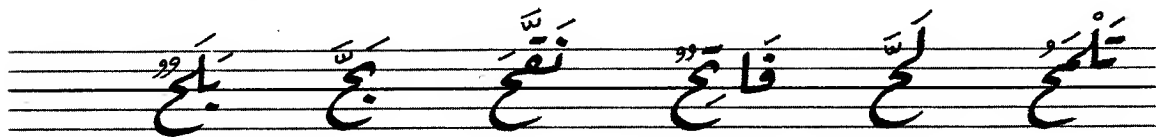
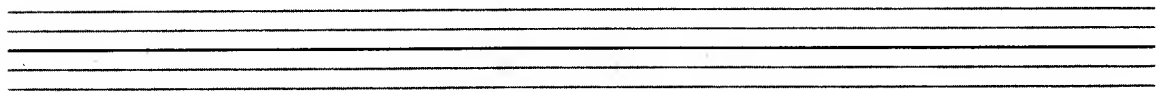
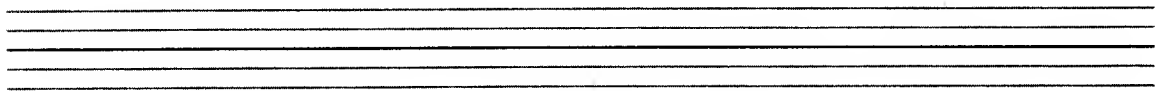
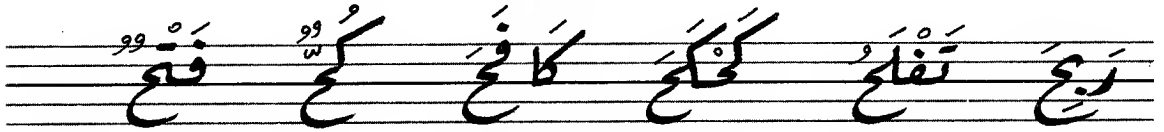
Your teacher will dictate the following words in an arbitrary sequence:

حَلَبُ لَحْمٍ حَمَلٌ حَكْمٌ حَلٌّ حَالًا مَحْبُوبٌ مُحَارِبٌ حَرْبٌ حَقًّا
حَتْفٍ كَحَلٍ حَمَالٍ حَظٌّ مَتَحَفٍ نُحْنَا رِبَحَتْ لَحْنٌ لَحْدًا مُلِحِدٌ مُكَحَلٌ

Final Haa' is written under the joining line; it begins with a stroke similar to medial Haa' and ends with a long, curved tail which reaches the -2 line. Study and trace the examples below.



Copy the following words in the blank lines:



Write out the following words in Arabic script:

/falaHa/, /laHHa/, /raabiHin/, /ṭaHṭaHa/, /tulaqqiHu/,
/rakaHa/, /fatHun/, /faatiHin/, /manaHa/, /mukaafiHun/,
/murbiHin/, /balaHun/, /muliHHun/, and /taftaHu/.

The first part of independent Haa' is similar to the initial Haa' which precedes a descending letter. The second part is the flourished curved tail. Study and trace the examples below:

ح ح لَاحَ بَاحَ فَرَحَ نَوَّحَ طَرَحَ

Copy the following words in the blank lines:

كَفَّاحٌ مَنَاحٌ مَرَّاحٌ نَوَّحٌ فَدَّاحٌ مَبَّاحٌ كَدَّاحٌ

Write out the following words in Arabic script:

/lawHin/, /tabuuHu/, /ṭaraHa/, /fallaaHun/, /faṛaHin/,
/miftaaHun/, /ruuHin/, /mubaaHun/, /kifaaHun/, /maṭaariHu/,
/fariHa/, /kadaHa/, /murtaaHin/, and /fattaaHun/.

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate the following words in whatever sequence he chooses:

لَمَحَ لَوَّحَ قَمَحَ مَنَحَ فَلَّاحَ بَلَحَ فَتَحَ مِفْتَاحَ طَرَحَ مَكَافِحَ بَاحَ لَحَ
مُلِحَ نَزَحَ قَرَحَ حَنَّا حَدَثَ حَرَّمَ حَمَلٌ بَحْرٌ نُحِبُّ لَحَظَ كَعْبٌ نَلْحَقُ

Review

(a) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily.

مَا مِنْ مَنْ قَلَمٌ مُلَازِمٌ مُقَدِّمٌ
مَكْتَبٍ نَحْنُ مَكْتَبَاتُ مَلِكٍ مَرْحَبًا
حُكُومَتُكُمْ طَاوِلَاتُ طَاوِلَاتِ حُكُومَتِكُمْ

ما مَن مِن قَلَمٍ مَلَا زِمٍ مَقْدَمٌ
مَكْتَبٍ نَحْنُ مَكْتَبَاتُ مَلِكٍ مَرْحَبًا
حُكُومَتُكُمْ طَاوَلَاتُ طَاوَلَاتِ حُكُومَتِكُمْ

The letter "xaa' "

ح خ س ج ح خ س ج ح خ س ج

خ ج د خ ح ح د ع ع غ غ خ ف غ ج ح خ

خ ح د ذ ر ز س ص ض ط ظ ع ف ق ك ح ج خ ح ز

١٠٠ ١٠١ ١٠٢ ١٠٣ ١٠٤ ١٠٥ ١٠٦ ١٠٧ ١٠٨ ١٠٩ ١١٠ ١١١ ١١٢ ١١٣ ١١٤ ١١٥ ١١٦ ١١٧ ١١٨ ١١٩ ١٢٠ ١٢١ ١٢٢ ١٢٣ ١٢٤ ١٢٥ ١٢٦ ١٢٧ ١٢٨ ١٢٩ ١٣٠ ١٣١ ١٣٢ ١٣٣ ١٣٤ ١٣٥ ١٣٦ ١٣٧ ١٣٨ ١٣٩ ١٤٠ ١٤١ ١٤٢ ١٤٣ ١٤٤ ١٤٥ ١٤٦ ١٤٧ ١٤٨ ١٤٩ ١٥٠ ١٥١ ١٥٢ ١٥٣ ١٥٤ ١٥٥ ١٥٦ ١٥٧ ١٥٨ ١٥٩ ١٦٠ ١٦١ ١٦٢ ١٦٣ ١٦٤ ١٦٥ ١٦٦ ١٦٧ ١٦٨ ١٦٩ ١٧٠ ١٧١ ١٧٢ ١٧٣ ١٧٤ ١٧٥ ١٧٦ ١٧٧ ١٧٨ ١٧٩ ١٨٠ ١٨١ ١٨٢ ١٨٣ ١٨٤ ١٨٥ ١٨٦ ١٨٧ ١٨٨ ١٨٩ ١٩٠ ١٩١ ١٩٢ ١٩٣ ١٩٤ ١٩٥ ١٩٦ ١٩٧ ١٩٨ ١٩٩ ٢٠٠ ٢٠١ ٢٠٢ ٢٠٣ ٢٠٤ ٢٠٥ ٢٠٦ ٢٠٧ ٢٠٨ ٢٠٩ ٢١٠ ٢١١ ٢١٢ ٢١٣ ٢١٤ ٢١٥ ٢١٦ ٢١٧ ٢١٨ ٢١٩ ٢٢٠ ٢٢١ ٢٢٢ ٢٢٣ ٢٢٤ ٢٢٥ ٢٢٦ ٢٢٧ ٢٢٨ ٢٢٩ ٢٣٠ ٢٣١ ٢٣٢ ٢٣٣ ٢٣٤ ٢٣٥ ٢٣٦ ٢٣٧ ٢٣٨ ٢٣٩ ٢٤٠ ٢٤١ ٢٤٢ ٢٤٣ ٢٤٤ ٢٤٥ ٢٤٦ ٢٤٧ ٢٤٨ ٢٤٩ ٢٥٠ ٢٥١ ٢٥٢ ٢٥٣ ٢٥٤ ٢٥٥ ٢٥٦ ٢٥٧ ٢٥٨ ٢٥٩ ٢٦٠ ٢٦١ ٢٦٢ ٢٦٣ ٢٦٤ ٢٦٥ ٢٦٦ ٢٦٧ ٢٦٨ ٢٦٩ ٢٧٠ ٢٧١ ٢٧٢ ٢٧٣ ٢٧٤ ٢٧٥ ٢٧٦ ٢٧٧ ٢٧٨ ٢٧٩ ٢٨٠ ٢٨١ ٢٨٢ ٢٨٣ ٢٨٤ ٢٨٥ ٢٨٦ ٢٨٧ ٢٨٨ ٢٨٩ ٢٩٠ ٢٩١ ٢٩٢ ٢٩٣ ٢٩٤ ٢٩٥ ٢٩٦ ٢٩٧ ٢٩٨ ٢٩٩ ٣٠٠ ٣٠١ ٣٠٢ ٣٠٣ ٣٠٤ ٣٠٥ ٣٠٦ ٣٠٧ ٣٠٨ ٣٠٩ ٣١٠ ٣١١ ٣١٢ ٣١٣ ٣١٤ ٣١٥ ٣١٦ ٣١٧ ٣١٨ ٣١٩ ٣٢٠ ٣٢١ ٣٢٢ ٣٢٣ ٣٢٤ ٣٢٥ ٣٢٦ ٣٢٧ ٣٢٨ ٣٢٩ ٣٣٠ ٣٣١ ٣٣٢ ٣٣٣ ٣٣٤ ٣٣٥ ٣٣٦ ٣٣٧ ٣٣٨ ٣٣٩ ٣٤٠ ٣٤١ ٣٤٢ ٣٤٣ ٣٤٤ ٣٤٥ ٣٤٦ ٣٤٧ ٣٤٨ ٣٤٩ ٣٥٠ ٣٥١ ٣٥٢ ٣٥٣ ٣٥٤ ٣٥٥ ٣٥٦ ٣٥٧ ٣٥٨ ٣٥٩ ٣٦٠ ٣٦١ ٣٦٢ ٣٦٣ ٣٦٤ ٣٦٥ ٣٦٦ ٣٦٧ ٣٦٨ ٣٦٩ ٣٧٠ ٣٧١ ٣٧٢ ٣٧٣ ٣٧٤ ٣٧٥ ٣٧٦ ٣٧٧ ٣٧٨ ٣٧٩ ٣٨٠ ٣٨١ ٣٨٢ ٣٨٣ ٣٨٤ ٣٨٥ ٣٨٦ ٣٨٧ ٣٨٨ ٣٨٩ ٣٩٠ ٣٩١ ٣٩٢ ٣٩٣ ٣٩٤ ٣٩٥ ٣٩٦ ٣٩٧ ٣٩٨ ٣٩٩ ٤٠٠ ٤٠١ ٤٠٢ ٤٠٣ ٤٠٤ ٤٠٥ ٤٠٦ ٤٠٧ ٤٠٨ ٤٠٩ ٤١٠ ٤١١ ٤١٢ ٤١٣ ٤١٤ ٤١٥ ٤١٦ ٤١٧ ٤١٨ ٤١٩ ٤٢٠ ٤٢١ ٤٢٢ ٤٢٣ ٤٢٤ ٤٢٥ ٤٢٦ ٤٢٧ ٤٢٨ ٤٢٩ ٤٣٠ ٤٣١ ٤٣٢ ٤٣٣ ٤٣٤ ٤٣٥ ٤٣٦ ٤٣٧ ٤٣٨ ٤٣٩ ٤٤٠ ٤٤١ ٤٤٢ ٤٤٣ ٤٤٤ ٤٤٥ ٤٤٦ ٤٤٧ ٤٤٨ ٤٤٩ ٤٥٠ ٤٥١ ٤٥٢ ٤٥٣ ٤٥٤ ٤٥٥ ٤٥٦ ٤٥٧ ٤٥٨ ٤٥٩ ٤٦٠ ٤٦١ ٤٦٢ ٤٦٣ ٤٦٤ ٤٦٥ ٤٦٦ ٤٦٧ ٤٦٨ ٤٦٩ ٤٧٠ ٤٧١ ٤٧٢ ٤٧٣ ٤٧٤ ٤٧٥ ٤٧٦ ٤٧٧ ٤٧٨ ٤٧٩ ٤٨٠ ٤٨١ ٤٨٢ ٤٨٣ ٤٨٤ ٤٨٥ ٤٨٦ ٤٨٧ ٤٨٨ ٤٨٩ ٤٩٠ ٤٩١ ٤٩٢ ٤٩٣ ٤٩٤ ٤٩٥ ٤٩٦ ٤٩٧ ٤٩٨ ٤٩٩ ٥٠٠ ٥٠١ ٥٠٢ ٥٠٣ ٥٠٤ ٥٠٥ ٥٠٦ ٥٠٧ ٥٠٨ ٥٠٩ ٥١٠ ٥١١ ٥١٢ ٥١٣ ٥١٤ ٥١٥ ٥١٦ ٥١٧ ٥١٨ ٥١٩ ٥٢٠ ٥٢١ ٥٢٢ ٥٢٣ ٥٢٤ ٥٢٥ ٥٢٦ ٥٢٧ ٥٢٨ ٥٢٩ ٥٣٠ ٥٣١ ٥٣٢ ٥٣٣ ٥٣٤ ٥٣٥ ٥٣٦ ٥٣٧ ٥٣٨ ٥٣٩ ٥٤٠ ٥٤١ ٥٤٢ ٥٤٣ ٥٤٤ ٥٤٥ ٥٤٦ ٥٤٧ ٥٤٨ ٥٤٩ ٥٥٠ ٥٥١ ٥٥٢ ٥٥٣ ٥٥٤ ٥٥٥ ٥٥٦ ٥٥٧ ٥٥٨ ٥٥٩ ٥٦٠ ٥٦١ ٥٦٢ ٥٦٣ ٥٦٤ ٥٦٥ ٥٦٦ ٥٦٧ ٥٦٨ ٥٦٩ ٥٧٠ ٥٧١ ٥٧٢ ٥٧٣ ٥٧٤ ٥٧٥ ٥٧٦ ٥٧٧ ٥٧٨ ٥٧٩ ٥٨٠ ٥٨١ ٥٨٢ ٥٨٣ ٥٨٤ ٥٨٥ ٥٨٦ ٥٨٧ ٥٨٨ ٥٨٩ ٥٩٠ ٥٩١ ٥٩٢ ٥٩٣ ٥٩٤ ٥٩٥ ٥٩٦ ٥٩٧ ٥٩٨ ٥٩٩ ٦٠٠ ٦٠١ ٦٠٢ ٦٠٣ ٦٠٤ ٦٠٥ ٦٠٦ ٦٠٧ ٦٠٨ ٦٠٩ ٦١٠ ٦١١ ٦١٢ ٦١٣ ٦١٤ ٦١٥ ٦١٦ ٦١٧ ٦١٨ ٦١٩ ٦٢٠ ٦٢١ ٦٢٢ ٦٢٣ ٦٢٤ ٦٢٥ ٦٢٦ ٦٢٧ ٦٢٨ ٦٢٩ ٦٣٠ ٦٣١ ٦٣٢ ٦٣٣ ٦٣٤ ٦٣٥ ٦٣٦ ٦٣٧ ٦٣٨ ٦٣٩ ٦٤٠ ٦٤١ ٦٤٢ ٦٤٣ ٦٤٤ ٦٤٥ ٦٤٦ ٦٤٧ ٦٤٨ ٦٤٩ ٦٥٠ ٦٥١ ٦٥٢ ٦٥٣ ٦٥٤ ٦٥٥ ٦٥٦ ٦٥٧ ٦٥٨ ٦٥٩ ٦٦٠ ٦٦١ ٦٦٢ ٦٦٣ ٦٦٤ ٦٦٥ ٦٦٦ ٦٦٧ ٦٦٨ ٦٦٩ ٦٧٠ ٦٧١ ٦٧٢ ٦٧٣ ٦٧٤ ٦٧٥ ٦٧٦ ٦٧٧ ٦٧٨ ٦٧٩ ٦٨٠ ٦٨١ ٦٨٢ ٦٨٣ ٦٨٤

131

Exercise 1

حَالٌ حَالٌ حَامٌ حَانَ حَبٌ حَبْرًا حَرَبٌ حَزَنٌ حَرَقٌ حَرَقٌ
حَلٌ حَدَمَ خَطَفَ خُرُوفٍ حُرُوفٍ حَطَبٌ حَطَبٌ خَطٌّ خَلَطَ خَطَطَ

Exercise 2

حَرَابٌ حَظَرٌ حَطَّاطٌ خَفَفَ خَفَّفَتْ حُوتًا خِتَانٌ خَزَانٌ خَدَمَاتٌ
خَزَانًا خَالِدٌ خَرْطُومٌ خَلَقَ حَلَقَ قَاخِرٌ خَمَرٌ خَلَفَ خِلَافٌ
خِطَابٌ خَبْرًا خُبْرٌ حَظَرٌ خَمَرٌ خَنَقَ خُرُوفٌ خَرَقًا خَلَقًا خَطٌّ

Exercise 3

بُخْلٌ فَخْرًا ثَخُنَ تُخُومٌ تَحَتَ تَحَتَّ تُخَوْتُ بُخَارٌ بِحَارٍ
بَحَارٌ فَخْمٌ فَخْدٌ تَخْلُو مُخْبِرًا مَخْزِنٌ مَخَارِزُ تُخْبِرُ نُخْبِرُ

Exercise 4

خَلَخَلَ مُخَطَّطٌ تَحَلَّلَ تَخَلَّلَ مُخْتَلِفٌ تُخُومًا تَخَطَّبُ نَخُطُّ
تُخَالِفُونَ فُخُورًا تَخْدُمُونَ مُخَابِرَاتٍ مُخْبِرٌ مُخَاطَرَاتٍ بَخْتُ
تَخَافُ تَبَخَّرَ فَخَمَ تَحْظَرُ فَخْدٌ مَخْلُوقٌ تَخْلُو خَطَّاطًا تُفَخِّمُ

Now read the next four exercises which provide drill on final and independent xaa'.

Exercise 5

فَخَّ مَخَّ بَخَّ نَبَخَ طَبَخَ تَطَبَخَ نَطَبَخَ لَطَخَ تَلَطَّخَ نَفَخَ
نُفِخَ وَفَخَ رِبَخَ طَبَخَ مَطَبَخَ نَافَخَ مَخَّ طَبَخَ لَخَخَ لَحَلَخَ

Exercise 6

تَطَبَخُ نَطَبُخُ تَتَلَطَّخُ وَفَخَ تُوَفِّخُ نُوفِّخُ مَطَبِخُ مَطَابِخُ
فَخَّ نَنفُخُ تَنفُخُ مَوْفِّخُ لَخَّ مُلَتِّخُ مَنَافِخُ
تُنْفِخُ نَخَّ تَخَّ تَبُخُ تَلَطَّخَ لَطَخَ طَبَخَ مُنْتَفِخُ تَطَبُخُ

Exercise 7

بَاخَ كُوخَ نَبُوخَ تَبُوخُ مَنَاحُ طَبَاحُ بَاخَ تَنَوَّخَ
رَاحَ فَوَّخَ فَوَّحَ تَرَاحَ دَوَّحَ مَفَّحُ دَاخَ فَرَّاحُ

Exercise 8

مَنَاحُ فَوَّخُ لَاحَ تَفَوَّحُ مَرَّاحُ مَفَّحُ لَوَّحُ
طَبَاحُ فُخُوخُ مَنُفُوخُ مَنَفَاحُ كُوخُ مَطَابِخُ مَطَبِخُ
مَنُفُوخُ فِخَاخَ مَنَفَاحُ مَنَاحُ مَرَّاحُ نَافُوخُ فُرُوخُ

(2) To write xaa', one writes Haa' and then adds a dot above it. The shapes and the relative positions which letters assume before xaa' are those they assume before Haa'.

Copy the following sequences in the blank lines:

نَخْلٌ خَامٌ بَحْرٌ غَرَبٌ مَخَارِجُ

مُخْتَلِفٌ غُبْرٌ مُخْلَقٌ مُخَطِّطٌ لُخَاغٌ

خُدَمٌ غَرَمٌ طَبَخٌ مَنَافِعٌ مُنَحٌّ

فَخَاغٌ لَطْفٌ تَلُغٌ خَمْرٌ خُبْرٌ

Write the following words in Arabic script:

/maṭbaxun/, /xaanin/, /manaaxin/, /kuuxun/, /xadamat/,
/maxaazinu/, /xaṛuufun/, /baxtun/, /faaxirin/, /xaṛaabun/,
/mutaraaxin/, /wabbaxa/, /xalxala/, /xurṭuumin/, /tuxaalifu/,
/xazzaanun/, /nafaxa/, /fixaaxun/, /xaṭṭin/, /muxaṭṭaṭun/,
/laxxa/, /laxaba/, and /talxubu/.

Write down the following words as your teacher dictates them:

خَمْرٌ مِّمَّ تَخْدِمُ كُوْهُ مَطْبَحٌ خَبِرَ خَالِدٌ بَاخَ
نَفَعَ خَرَبَ تُعَرِّبُ نَافِعٌ لَخَفَ مُخَابِرَاتٌ تَلَحُّمٌ لَطَخَ

The consonant /j/ is represented by a connector called jiim. The basic stroke of jiim is identical to that of Haa' and xaa'; jiim, however, has a dot underneath the part which rests on the middle line. The following examples illustrate the jiim of nasx printing.

ج ج ج ج ج ج ج

ج ج ج ج ح ه خ ج ج ع ه
ح خ ج ج ج ج ج ج ج ج ج ج ج
ر ر ر ر ر ر ر ر ر ر ر ر

Read the following four exercises which provide drill on initial and medial jiim.

جُنَّ حَنَّ جَوَّ وَجَبَ جَدُّ حَدًّا جَلَبَ حَلَبَ جَرَّ جَدَرَ جَمَلًا جَبِلَ
جَمَلٌ وَهَدَ حُنُودٌ حَنَدَ حَذَبَ حَرَدَ حُرَّبَ خُرَّبَ خَفَّفَ حَفَّفَ

Exercise 2

تُوجَدُ جُنُودًا جَمَالٌ رَجُلٍ جَدُولٌ حَمَالٌ رِجَالٌ جَدَابٌ
وَاجِبٌ خَبَرٌ جَمَالًا جَادَلْ جَدَاوِلُ وَجُودٍ رَحَبٌ نُرْحَبُ
جَزُوٌ حَاجِبٌ جَبْرًا رَجَحَ جَذَابًا حَرَّ جَذْرًا جُدُوٌ

Exercise 3

تَجِدُ تَجْرُ نَجِدُ تَحْدُ مَجْدُ نَجْمُ نُجُومُ نَجُولُ نَخْرَ تَجَارِبُ
تُجَارِلُ حَجَزَ تَحَجَّرَ تَجْلُبُ نَجْلُبُ تُجَدِّدُ تُحَدِّدُ مَجَالُ حَجَبَ

Exercise 4

لِجَانٍ مُّجِدِّ مُجَنَّدًا تَجَدَّدُ نُجْرُبُ مُشَجَّرٌ مُّحْتَجِبٌ نَجْرُ
حَجَلٌ تَجَنَّدَ تَتَجَنَّدُونَ جَحَظَ حَجَزَ تَحَجَّرَ نَجُوبٌ نُجْدَرُ
نُجُومًا حِجَابٌ مُّخْتَجِرًا نَجْدٌ تُجَرَّبُونَ حَجَرًا لِّجَانًا نُجَارِلُ

Now read the following four exercises which provide drill on final and independent jiim:

Exercise 5

ثَلَجٌ نَتَجَ نَاتِجٌ نَاتِحٌ مُنْتَفِخٌ حَجَّ مَدَجَّ وَلَجَ ثَلَجَ ثَلَجٌ مُنْتِجٌ وَحَّ رَجَحَ رَجَجَ رَمَجَ دَبَجَ نَعَجُ مُنْتِجٌ يَنْدِجُ

Exercise 6

مُنْتَجُ تَنْتُجُ نَبَحَ مَطْبَحٍ وَلَجَ مُعْتَلِجٌ نُنْتِجُ مُرْتَجٌ تُرَجُّهُ
نَتَجُ تَحْجُ نَذْبَحُ حَجَّ مُنْدِجٌ تَنْتُجُ نَلَجُ رِبَحَ رِبَحَ رِبَحَ

Exercise 7

تَاجَ تَوَّجَ حَرَجَ تَعَجَّ مَزَجَ فَوَّجَ فَلَّاحُ ثُلُوجُ فَوَّجَ فَوَّجَ
دَرَجَ تَدَرَجَ نُبَّاحُ حُرُوجُ جُرُوجُ دَارِجُ تَاجُ تَوَّجَ مَوْجُ

Exercise 8

حَاجَ حُجَّاجٌ تَعَجَّ نُعِجُ مُبِجٌ مَنَاجٍ مَخَجٌ حُرُوجُ
تُفِجُ مَلَّاحٌ مُتَمَوِّجٌ مَزَجَ مَزَّاجٌ مَدُوحٌ كَحٌ تَتَخَرَّجُ

(2) In ruq9a script, the only difference between jiim and Haa' is that the former has a dot underneath the part which rests on the middle line. The shapes and the relative positions which letters assume before jiim are those they assume before Haa' and xaa'.

Copy the following sequences in the blank sets of lines.

هَبِلٌ هَبِلٌ هَبِلٌ هَبِلٌ هَبِلٌ
تَجَلِبُ تَجَلِبُ تَجَلِبُ تَجَلِبُ تَجَلِبُ
نَجَاوِرُ نَجَاوِرُ نَجَاوِرُ نَجَاوِرُ نَجَاوِرُ

جَبَرُ حَبَّ مَجْنُونٍ رِبْعَانُ جَزْمُ تَلْجِجِ

حَاجُ لَبَانُ تَلْجِ تَخَرَّجُ فَوْجُ

مَنْتَجِ حَاجُ مَوْجُ لَجَّ حَجَّ

Write out the following words in Arabic script:

/wajadat/, /majaalun/, /xuruujin/, /najlibu/, /jaṣṣada/,
/ṣajulun/, /ḥaljin/, /jibaalan/, /jaddada/, /Hajaba/,
/muntijun/, /jaljala/, /nitaajin/, /waajibun/, /mujdibin/,
/mujannadan/, /daṣṣaja/, /fawjun/, /lujajun/, /Hajjin/,
/jadaawilu/, /tajurru/, /lijaanin/, /jaddaabun/, /Hujajun/,
and /junuudun/.

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate the following words in an arbitrary sequence:

جَفَّتْ ثَلْجٌ تَجَدَّدَ خَرَجَ جِدًّا نَجْمٌ رَجُلٌ دَبَّحَ
تَاجٌ جُذُورًا جَمَلٌ تَجِدُ حَجَزَ مَوْجٌ مِحْلَجٌ حَلَجَ

Review

(a) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily.

فُنْجَانٌ فُنْجَانًا رَجُلٌ رَجُلًا
خَبَرٌ خَبَرًا فُنْجَانِ فُنْجَانُ فُنْجَانًا

(b) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily; except for not being fully vocalized, they are identical to what you read in exercise (a) above.

فُنْجَانٌ فُنْجَانًا رَجُلٌ رَجُلًا
خَبَرٌ خَبَرًا فُنْجَانِ فُنْجَانُ فُنْجَانًا

(c) Learn to spell the items of exercise (b). Your teacher will select some of those items for dictation.

The letter "siin"

(1) The consonant /s/ is represented by the connector siin which has two basic shapes in nasx writing: س (in initial and medial positions) and س (in final position and independently). Medial and final siin are, of course, joined from behind and would therefore appear as سس and سس respectively.

Study the following examples of siin:

سس سس سس سس سس سس سس سس سس
سس سس سس سس سس سس سس سس سس

Place a circle around each siin in the following sequences:

ش س ش تنب س ن س س ش س س ق

و س تنب س ن ش س ش س ش

Read the following four exercises which provide drill on initial and medial siin.

Exercise 1

سَدَّ سُرَّ سَادَ سَبَّ سَابَ سَاقَ سَاقُ سَالَ سَلَّ سَوَّفَ وَسَمَ
سَنَدًا سَجَدَ سَبَقَ سَقَطَ سَاحَ سَمَّ سَمَنَ سَادِلُ نَتَبَادَلُ

Exercise 2

سَلَّمَ سَلَامٌ سَاحِلُ سَوَاحِلُ سَنَّ سِتَّ سَبَبَ سَنَدًا سَابِقًا
سَحَابَ سَمَّ تَنَّمَ سِرْبُ سَحَبْتُ سُوْقُ نَتَوَّقُ سَوَّقَ سَابَ تَتَنَابُ
سَنَحْتُ سَبَبْتُ سُمِحَ سَارُّ سُلُوكًا سَلَكَ سَامُّ سُرَّ سَلَّمَ

Exercise 3

حَسَدَ حُسَّادُ حَسَنَ حُسِبَ كَسَبَ كَتَبَ مَسَنُ تَسَوَّلَ
جَسْرُ نَسُودُ تَسَمَّ مُسْلِمًا نَسَلُكَ قَسَمَ تَسْبَحُ نَسَبَ

Exercise 4

حَسَابٌ حَسَنًا تَنْسَحِبُ مَسَاحًا مَسْجِدٌ
مَسَاجِدُ جُسُورًا مَسْجِدٌ بِسَلَامٍ مُسَبِّحًا كَسَلَانُ مَسْقَطٌ
تَكْسِرُ بِسَبَبٍ تَسَلَّلَ مُقَسِّمٌ تَسُودُ نُسْلِمُ تَسَلَّمَ







Now read the next four exercises which provide drill
on final and independent siin.

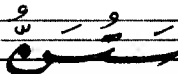
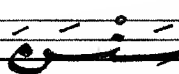
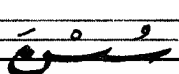
Exercise 5

مَسَّ جَسَّ لَبَسَ تَمَسَّ لَسَنَ لُمَسَّ قَسَّ خَمَسَ كَيْسَ كَنَسَ كُنْتُ
نَجَسَ خَامَسَ رَجَسَ حُبَسَ لُبَسَ مَلَأَسَ مَسَّ مَسَّنَ

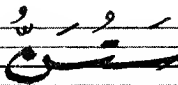
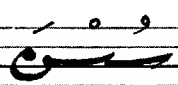
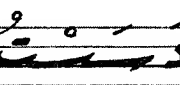
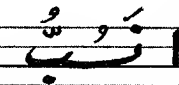
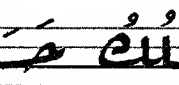
Exercise 6

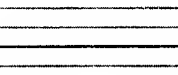
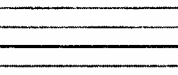

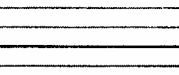
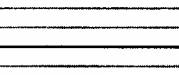
خَمَسَ تَلَمَسَ تَوَنَسَ تَلَبَسَ فَلَسَ نَحَسَ نُحَسِنُ
طَرَأَسَ مُفْلَسَ خَامَسَ دَحَسَ دَبَسَ مَلَبَسَ
نَجَلَسَ كَنَسَ كَنَسَنَ نَكَسَ مَاسَ تَمَسَّ جَلَسَ

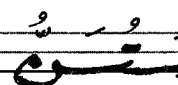
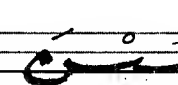
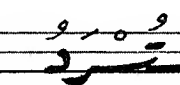
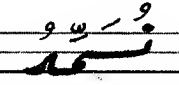
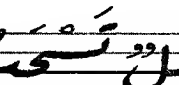
The shape  consists of two letters (siin + siin); however, the tooth can be used as the basic stroke of a medial letter:  (siin + baa' + siin),  (siin + nuun + siin),  (siin + yaa' + siin),  (siin + taa' + siin),  (siin + θaa' + siin). Study and trace the following examples:

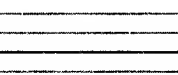
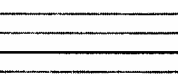


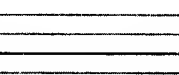
  

Copy each of the following sequences in the blank lines:

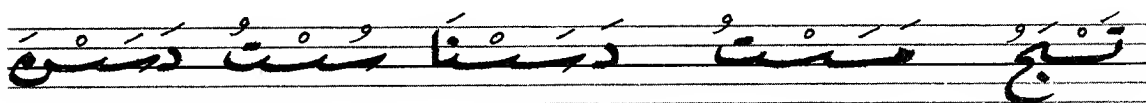
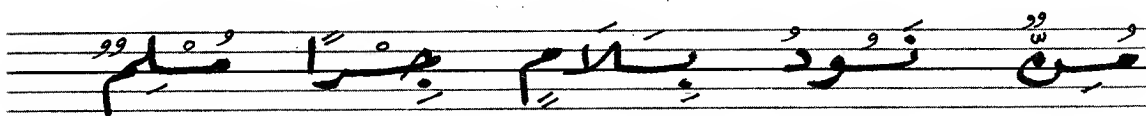
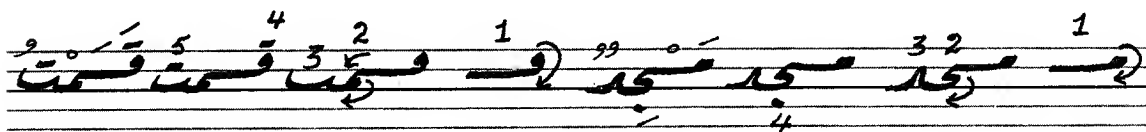
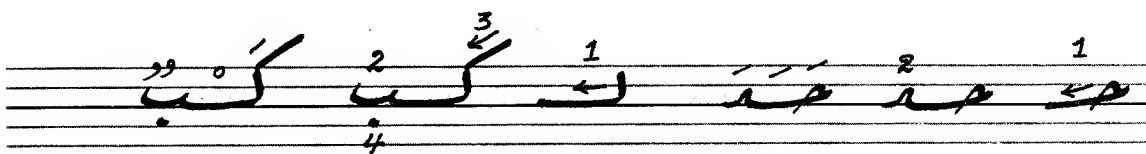
    

/sarṛa/, /sadda/, and /saqaṭat/.

Medial siin in ruq9a script consists of a long horizontal line between the preceding letter and the following one. No tooth separates medial siin from the preceding letter unless that letter is also a siin (or ṣiin, which you will learn later). Study then trace the examples below.



Copy the following words in the blank lines:

سَرَّ سَدَّ سَاقٌ سَبَبٌ وَسِمٌ

سَمْنٌ سَجَدَ وَسَطٌ سَطَحٌ

Write out the following words in Arabic script:

/sawfa/, /sabaqa/, /sukkaṛin/, /salaamun/, /saaHilan/,
/sinnun/, /sanadan/, /sajjaadun/, /sal/, /samma/, /saaqun/,

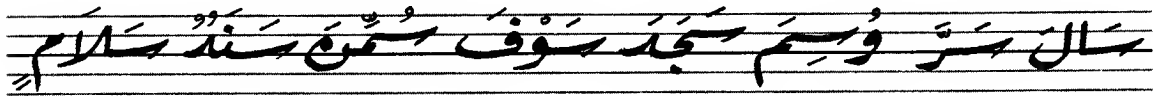
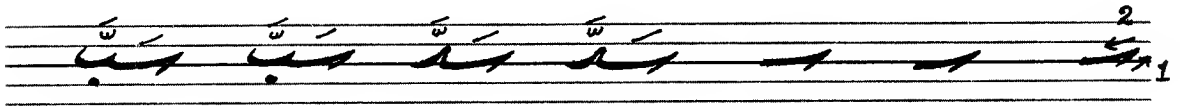
Exercise 7

دَسَّ قَاسٍ دَرَسَ دَرَسْنَ نَاسٌ قَاسٌ قَاتِنٌ فَارِسٌ مَارِسٌ جَرِسٌ جَرِئَتِنَ
دَرَسَ دَرَسْنَ دُرِسَ دُرُوسٍ كَاسٍ كَاتِبِنَ مُدَرِّسٌ نَامُوسٌ نَاقُوسٌ

Exercise 8

فَرَسٌ جَامُوسٌ مُقَدِّسٌ قَدَسَ مَلْمُوسٌ تُعَارِسُ دَرَسْنَ دَرَسَ
مَدَارِسُ كَابُوسٌ قَامُوسٌ لِبَاسٌ دَرَسَ دَسَّ دَسَّسْنَ دَبَّيْنِ
كَنَّاسٌ مَحْبُوسٌ مَلْبُوسٌ مُدَرِّسٌ مُكَدِّسٌ مَارَسَ مَارَسْنَ تُقَاسُ دَارِسٌ

(2) The siin of ruq9a script differs from the corresponding nasx shape in that the former has a straight horizontal line rather than three teeth. Initial siin in ruq9a script begins with a very small slanting stroke which is written upwards. Study then trace the examples below:



Write out the following words in Arabic script:

/Hisaabun/, /sanasbaHu/, /bisalaamin/, /jusuuṛan/, /jisrun/,
/qismun/, /masjidan/, /kassarāt/, /simsaarun/, /bisababin/,
/tasuuqu/, /tasbaHu/, /tansaHibu/, /nasluku/, /musinnin/,
/saHaaban/, /Hasada/, /mismaarin/, and /kasabtu/.

Dictation

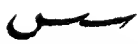
Your teacher will dictate to you the following words
in an arbitrary sequence:

سَلَامٌ مَسْتَسْتُ مُسْلِمٍ حَسَنِ جِسْرٍ سَابَ سَتَّ حُسْبٍ
سَمَتٌ سَتْسَرٌ سُلُوكًا نَسْلُكَ سَجَارٍ مَسْجَلٌ قَسَمٌ شَوْقًا

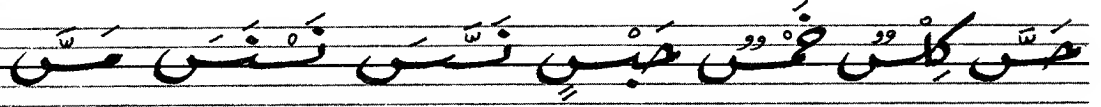
Except for having a straight line rather than three
teeth, final siin in ruq9a script is like final siin in
nasx printing. Study then trace the examples below:

مَسِي مَسِي مَسِي مَسِي مَسِي

طَرَابُلسُ تُونِسُ مَقْلِسُ عَمَلِسُ

The shape  consists of two letters (siin + siin), but the tooth may be used as the basic stroke of a medial baa', taa', ṭaa', nuun, or yaa'.

Copy each of the following words in the blank lines:



Write out the following words in Arabic script:

/tamassu/, /taHassasa/, /tuunisu/, /muflisin/, /malaabisu/,
/ṭaraabulusa/, /xamsin/, /talmasu/, /basbasa/, /nuHissu/,
/kilsun/, /dibsun/, /labisa/, and /lamasa/.

In ruq9a script, independent siin begins with the small upward stroke which occurs on initial siin; from then on it has the same shape as final siin. Study then trace the examples below:

س س س فائس فائس فائس دس دس

درس فارس بدرس قاموس رؤس مدرس

Copy the following words in the blank lines:

فَارِيسُ مُكَدَّسٍ ثَامُوسُ لِبَاسِي دَرُوسُ قُدُوسُ

Write out the following words in Arabic script:

/faarisun/, /kaabuusin/, /maHbuusun/, /tumaarisu/, /naasun/,
/jaamuusun/, /darrasa/, /mukaddasun/, /jaṛasin/, /qaasa/,
/mudarrisin/, /dassa/, /ruusun/, and /qaamuusun/.

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate the following words to you:

مَارَسَ حَبَسَ مَلْبُوسٌ خَامِسٍ خَمْسٍ دَرَسَ طَرَابُلُسُ قَابُوسٍ
كَابُوسٍ تَمَسُّ جَامُوسٍ لَمَسَ فَلَسٍ سَمَكٌ سَنَسَحَبُ سُسْتِ سَاسِ

The letter "Siin"

(1) The consonant /š/ is represented by the connector šiin. Except for having three dots on top of the basic stroke, the nasx-style šiin is identical to the nasx-style siin. Study the following examples:

ش ش ش ش ش ش ش ش

Circle each sin in the following sequence:

س شش شش سد شش شش س س شش سد شش شش

Read the following four exercises which provide drill on initial and medial shin.

Exercise 1

شَنَّ سَنَّ شَدَّ سَدَّ شَرِبَ شَمَلُ شَرَفَ شَرَدَ سَرَدَ شَكَا شَمَسُ
شَتَّ شَكَلَ شُكْرًا سُكْرًا شَقَّ شَارَكَ شَحَنَ شَامِلُ شُرِبَ

Exercise 2

شَحَنَ شَحْنًا شَانَ شَوْقُ شَرَكَاتٍ شَاقٍ شَرَحَ سَرَحَ
شَارِبًا شَطَّ شَطْرًا سَطْرًا شَرُقُ شَتَّتَ شُرُوطًا فَاشِلٌ
تُوشِكُ نَاشِرُونَ شَانٌ كَاشِفٍ شَرَدَ شَدَّتْ سَدَّتْ شَوَّكُ شَاحِنَاتٍ

Exercise 3

فَشَلَّ نَشَرُ بَشَرٍ بَشْرٌ نَشَطَ نَشَاطٌ كَشَفَ تَشَرَّبُ
نَشَرَ نَنَشُرُ مَشَطَ نَشَكُ تُشَارِكُ مُشَرَّرٌ بِشَرَطٍ نَشَرَ نَسَرَ

Exercise 4

دِ مَشَقُ تَشْرَحُونَ مُشْرِقٌ مُبَشِّرًا مَشْمُولٌ تَشْكُرُونَ مُحْتَشِمٌ
حَشَدَ حَسَدَ مَشْرُوبَاتٍ تَشَرَّفْنَا مُشْرِفًا تَشْتَنُونَ مَشْحُونٌ نَشَاطًا
بَشْرًا تَشَرَّدَ حَشَدٌ حَشَجَ تَكْشِفُونَ مَنَشُورَاتٍ مَشْرِقٌ

Read the next four exercises which provide drill on
final and independent siin:

Exercise 5

حَشَّ بَشَّ جَسَّ جَشَّ نَكَشَ قَتَشَ نَاقَشَ نَقَشُ
نَقَشَ كَبَشَ كَبَشَ مَشِمَشُ كَبَشَ نَقَشَ نَبَشَ

Exercise 6

نَاقِشٌ مُنَاقِشٌ مُنَافِسٌ فَاجِشٌ فَحِشٌ حَبِشٌ
 نُوقِشَ نَقِشَ كَبِشٌ نَقِشٌ تَمِشٌ تُنَاقِشُ حَبَسَ
 حَشَّ مَفْتَشٌ فَتَشَ نَشَّ قَشَّ قَسَّ نَقِشَ

Exercise 7

فَرَشَ شَاكُوشٍ وَرَشَ وَرَسَ كَدَشٌ حَشَّشَ جَرَشٌ
 فَرَّاشٌ كَبَّاشٌ نَقَّاشٌ نَقَّاشٌ نَقَّاشٌ كَبَّاشٌ

Exercise 8

مَنْقُوشٍ مَارَسَ شَاكُوشٍ حَشَّاشٍ حُشَّاشٍ تَلَّاشٍ
 مَوَّاشٍ مُحَشَّشٌ مُتَلَّاشٍ تَفَرَّشٌ فَرَّاشٍ حَشَّشَ
 نَاسٌ مَفْرُوشٍ نَقَّاشٍ فَرَّاشٍ فَرَّاشٍ مَنْقُوشٍ

(2) In ruq9a script \$iin is characterized by a semi-circular, suprascript stroke which corresponds to the three dots of printed \$iin; otherwise, the shapes of ruq9a-style \$iin are identical to those of ruq9a-style siin. The supra-script stroke of ruq9a \$iin is the same as that of ruq9a 0aa'; with \$iin, the suprascript stroke is above the middle point of the horizontal line.

Study then trace each of the following words:

نَقَّاشَ نَقَّاشَ نَقَّاشَ نَقَّاشَ

تَشْرَبُ تَشْرَبُ تَشْرَبُ تَشْرَبُ

كَبَّاشَ كَبَّاشَ كَبَّاشَ كَبَّاشَ

تَشْرَبُ تَشْرَبُ تَشْرَبُ تَشْرَبُ

Copy the following sequences in the blank lines:

تَشْرَبُ تَشْرَبُ تَشْرَبُ تَشْرَبُ

هَمْزٌ وَرَيْسٌ مُنَاقِشٌ نِقَاشٌ مُفْتَمٌ

فَاجِئٌ مِمْسٌ مَشَادٌ شَمَلٌ شَمِيٌّ فُحْمٌ

Write out the following words in Arabic script:

/saribat/, /šamila/, /mašriqin/, /nuuqiša/, /farṛaašun/,
/šaakuušun/, /tamši/, /našaaṭan/, /satušrifu/, /šarqan/,
/mišmišun/, /Haššaša/, /naqqaašin/, /faašilun/, /šaṭṭin/,
/našrabu/, /naaširuuna/, /tanšuruuna/, /fattaša/, /firaaašin/

and /muHtašimun/.

[illegible]

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate the following words to you:

تَشْرَحُ شَوْفًا مَشْرُوبَاتٍ تُنَاقِشُ شَاكُوشٍ نَقَشَ فِرَاشٍ
كَبَشُ بَشْرًا كَاشِفُ سَحَنَ حَشَدَ نَاقِشَ سَتُشْرِفُ تَحَشُّشُ

Review

(a) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily.

شُبَّاکُ شُکْرًا سَبُّورَاتٍ بِ مَشَقِّ
شُبَّاکِ شُبَّاکًا سَبُّورَاتُ بِ مَشَقِّ

(b) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily; except for not being fully vocalized, they are identical to what you read in exercise (a).

شَبَّاکُ شَكَرًا سَبَّورَاتُ دَمَشْقُ
شَبَّاکِ شَبَّاكًا سَبَّورَاتُ دَمَشَقَ

(c) Learn to spell the items of exercise (b). Your teacher will select some of those items for dictation.

The letter "šaad"

The consonant /š/ is represented by a connector called šaad. The letter šaad has two shapes: ص (in initial and medial positions) and ص (in final position and independently). The following are examples of initial and medial šaad:

ص ص ص ص ص ص ص ص ص ص

Notice that the initial and medial forms of šaad are characterized by a tooth after the loop.

The following are examples of the final and the independent forms:

ص ص ص ص ص ص ص ص

Place a circle around each šaad in the following sequences:

ص ح ص ج ع ض ع ض ص س ش ف ص ف ف ض ق ط ص ط
ب ص ظ ف ص ق ع ح ض ش ص س ح ع ص ط ظ ع
ص ض ق م ص ف ص ق ف ف ص ق ق ف ض ص ش س م ص

Read the following exercises:

Exercise 1

صَبَّ صَدَّ مَدَّ صَبَّاحُ صَدَرَ صَحَّ صَحَا مَعَا صَدَّقَ صَدَقَ
صَاحَ صَامَ وَصَلَ وَصُولٍ صُدِرَ صَدْرًا صَافٍ نَاصِرٍ

Exercise 2

صَبَّاحٍ صَاحِبٍ صُحُفًا صَارَتْ صَعَمَ صَوْتُ صَفَّ
صَرَخَ صَارُوخٍ صَبَرَ صَارِمٌ صَفَرًا صَلَحَ صُورٍ مُوَصَّلٌ
صَرَفَ صَرَفٌ صَفٌّ صُفُوفًا صُنْدُوقٍ وَصَفَ صَلَحَ

Exercise 3

تَصِلُ نِصْفُ مَضْرُ بَصَلُ بَصَرٍ قَصْرًا قَفْرًا قَسْرًا
قَصَدَ فَصَلَ فَصَلَ قَصَبُ فُصُولُ بَصَرٍ فَصَلٍ تَصْبُو

Exercise 4

تَصَمْتُ مَصَمْتُ قَصَصْتُ تَصِلُونَ نَصَدُّ نَصَدُّ نَسْرُ
مِصْبَاحُ نَصْرًا نَفْرًا نَصَابُ نَصَبَ مَصَادِرُ مُصْلِحًا مُصْلِحُ
نَصُومُ مُصَدِّرُ تَفْصِلُ مُفْصَلٌ تَبَصَّرَ نُصِفُ تَصْحُبُ تَطْلُبُ

Exercise 5

نَصَّ نَمَنَّ قَصَّ مَصَّ لَصَّ لَقَنَّ تَلَصَّصَ نَقَصَّ قَلَصَّ حَبَسَ
تَقَلَّصَ قَفَّصُ قَانِصُ رَقَصَ رَاقِصُ قَنَصَ تَقَنَّصَ نَبَشَ

Exercise 6

تَقَلَّصَ تَرْقُصُ تَقْصُ رَقَصَ نَاقِصُ بَصْبَصَ تَقَنَّصَ
تَتَلَصَّصُ نَقْتَنِصُ مُنْتَصِ تَنْصُ نَصَّ تَقَمَّصَ قَصَّ
قَمَصَ نَقَصَ رَاقِصٍ نَصَّ قَانِصُ نُنَصَّ قَفَّصُ

Exercise 7

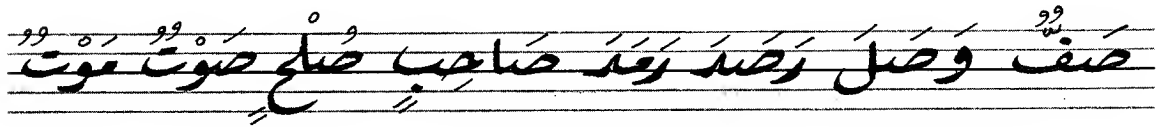
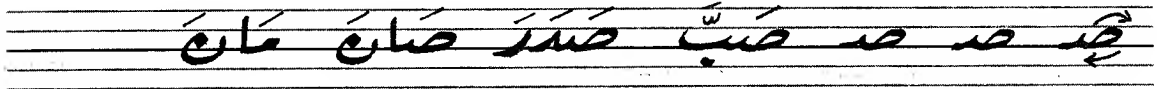
قَرَصَ قُرْصُ بَوِصٍ لُصُوصٍ قَارِصُ رَصَّ قَاسٍ
قَنَاصُ قَصَاصُ رَصَاصٍ قُرْصُ قَرَصَ قُرْصُ

Exercise 8

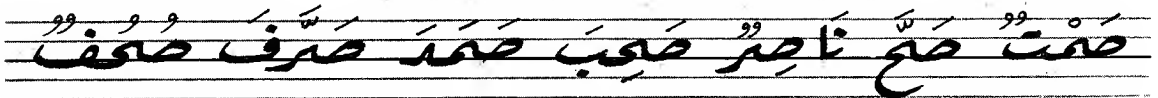
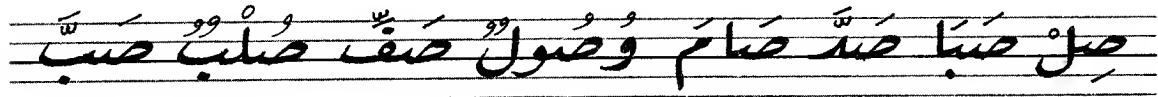
مَنْقُوصٍ رَقَاصُ مَنصُوصٍ رُبَانُ لُصُوصٍ قَنَاصُ حَرَشُ
قُرْصَ بَاصٍ مَنصُوصُ نَصَاصُ نَصَاصٍ قَصَاصٍ جَدَفَ
قَرَصَ رَصَاصٍ مَقْصُوصٍ رَقَاصٍ قَصَاصٍ قُرْصُ خَرَقَ

(2) Like its counterpart in nasx printing, ṣaad in ruq9a script has two shapes. It is important to remember that, unlike ṭaa' and ḍaa', ṣaad always has a tooth before the following letter.

Initial saad is written by first making an oblong loop similar to that of taa' and daa', then adding a tooth immediately after the loop. The circle of initial miim and the circle of initial saad differ in that the former is smaller, blocked, and not followed by a tooth. Study then trace the examples below:



When it precedes a descending letter, the tooth of saad is raised slightly above the middle line, thus assuming a bridge shape. Compare the shape of saad in the first line with its shape in the second line:



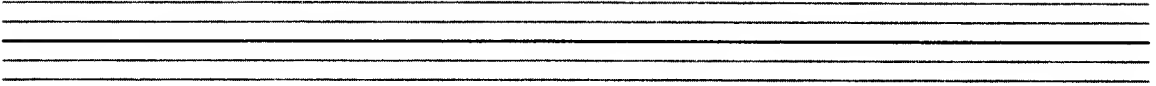
Copy the following words in the blank lines:

صَامَ وَصَلْتُ صَرَفَ صَحِبَ صَنَمْتُ صَبَّاحَ صَمْتُ

Write out the following words in Arabic script:

/ʃufuufun/, /ʃadrun/, /waʃalti/, /ʃaaHiban/, /ʃarraHa/,
/ʃabran/, /ʃifrun/, /ʃabaaHan/, /ʃaama/, /ʃaraftu/, /ʃaxiba/,

/waṣama/, /ṣawwara/, /ṣumuudun/, and /ṣaḥaa/.

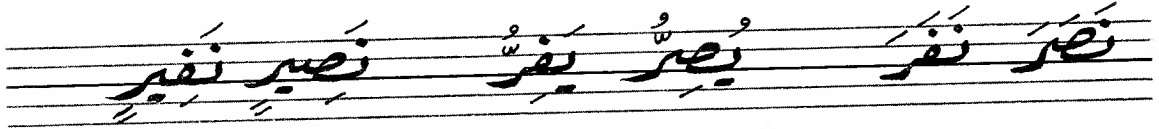


Like that of medial taa' (or ḍaa'), the loop of medial ṣaad should be written slightly above the middle line. It must be emphasized that the loop of medial ṣaad is followed by a tooth whereas the loop of medial taa' (or ḍaa') is not. Study then trace the following examples:

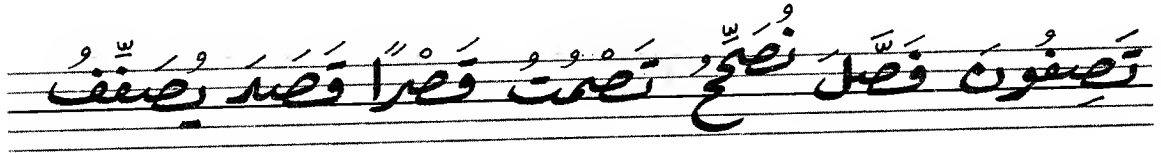
تَصِلُ نَصِفُ وَصَبِ وَطَبِ وَطِمِ وَصِلِ

نَصْرًا نَصَمْتُ نَصَحْتُ وَصَفْتُ نَظَرَ مَظَرَ

The circle of medial ṣaad and the circle of medial faa' differ in that the former (1) is larger, (2) is followed by a tooth, and (3) is written with its base rising slightly above the middle line. Study the following examples:



Copy the following words in the blank lines:



Blank lines for copying practice.

When the tooth of initial or medial ṣaad is followed by two or more other teeth, every other tooth is prominent; it must be emphasized, however that the last tooth is never prominent, and that a prominent tooth does not occur before a bridge. Study then copy the sequence of words given

below:

صَبَّ نَصَبٌ صَبَّ صَبَّ صَبَّ صَبَّ

Write out the following words in Arabic script:

/qaṣabun/, /niṣfun/, /muṣaHHaHin/, /qaṣada/, /taṣduru/,
/muṣawwarun/, /miṣru/, /biṣamtin/, /naṣran/, /nuṣannifu/,
/baṣalan/, /faṣlin/, /miṣbaaHan/, /naṣabataa/, /naṣṣabaa/,
/naṣṣabtanaa/, /ṣababtunna/, and /ṣababtu/.

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate the following to you:

وَصَلْنَا تَضُّتْ مِصْرُ صَرَفْتُمْ نَاصِرٌ مُصْلِحٌ صُفُوفًا نَصَابٌ صَدَّرَ
مُصَدِّرُونَ مَضْحُوبًا قَصْرًا صُحُفٍ قَصَّتْنَا قَصَصْتُ قَصَبَتَانِ نَصَبْتُنَّ

When writing final saad, one completes the oblong loop, then makes a very short upward stroke which is traced downward in the process of making the semicircle. Study then trace the examples below:

رَقَصَ رَقَصَ رَقَصَ رَقَصَ رَقَصَ رَقَصَ

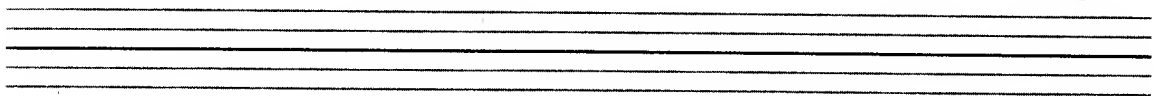
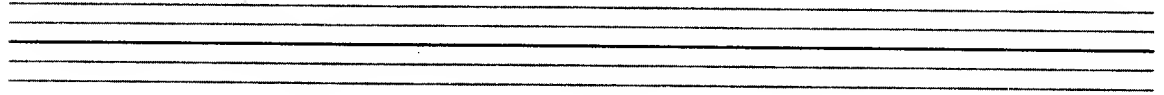
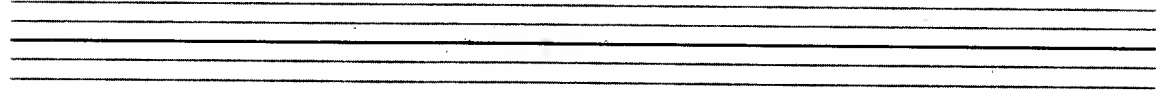
Copy the following words in the blank lines:

رَقَصَ رَقَصَ رَقَصَ رَقَصَ رَقَصَ رَقَصَ

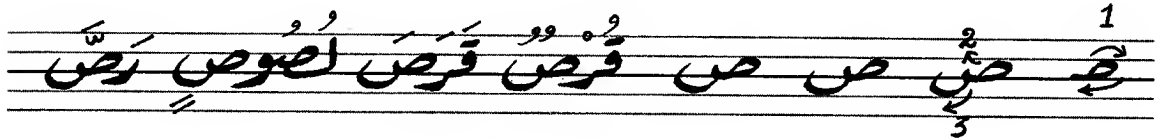
Blank lines for copying practice.

Write out the following words in Arabic script:
/narquṣu/, /tanuṣṣu/, /qaṣṣa/, /qafaṣun/, /naqṣin/,

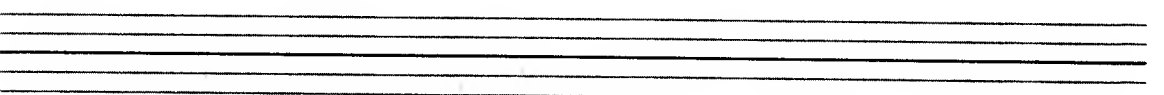
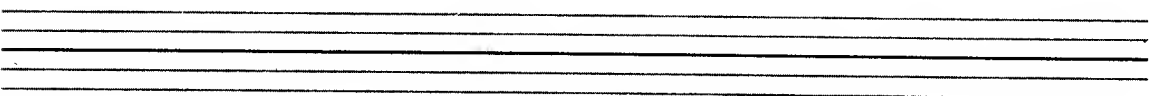
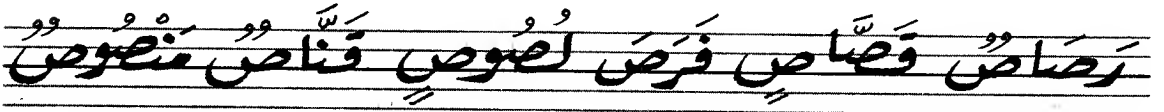
/maṣṣa/, /liṣṣun/, /mumtaṣṣin/, /qaaniṣun/, and /nuṣṣa/.



Independent ṣaad is the same as final ṣaad except that it is not joined from behind and its oblong loop is thus on (rather than above) the middle line. Study then trace the examples below:



Copy the following words in the blank lines:



/raqqaaşun/, /furaşun/, /raşaaşin/, /qannaaşun/, /buuşun/,
/raşşa/, /qaraşa/, /qişaaşin/, /qannaaşun/, /mamşuuşun/,
/manquuşin/, /luşuuşin/, /taqallaşa/, and /xaalişin/.

Write out the following words as your teacher dictates them:

رَقَاصٌ مَصَّ نَصَّ قَنَاصٍ نَاقِصًا

تَقْلَصْ قِصَاصٍ قِصَاصٍ فُرُصٌ رِصَاصٍ

The consonant /d/ is represented by the letter daad. The shapes of daad are identical to those of saad in all respects except that daad has a dot above the oblong loop. Circle each daad in the sequences below:

ص ض ص ض ص ص ص ف ض صن ض ف ص ص

ص ذ ف ض ص ص ص ض ف ض ط ض ط ق فن ض ض ص

Read the following exercises:

Exercise 1

ضَاؤٌ قَادٌ قَرٌّ ضَرٌّ ضَلٌّ فَلٌّ ضَمٌّ ضَرْبٌ ضَارِبٌ فَاضِلٌ ضَايِطٌ
ضَرَمَ ضَحِكَ ضَجَّ ضَبَطَ فَخَّمَ ضَخَّمَ ضَبَابٌ ضَارٌّ فَارٌّ

Exercise 2

ضَرَبَاتٍ ضَمِنَ ضَوَّاحٍ حَاضِرًا حَافِرًا مُحَاضِرَاتٍ ضَارٍ ضَايِطًا
ضَبَّاطٍ ضَلَّالًا ضَاحِكًا ضَخْمٌ ضَخَامٌ ضَحِكَ ضَرَرٍ ضَبَابٍ
ضَامِرًا ضَنَّ قَنَّ ضَارِبًا ضَمَدَ ضَمَانٍ ضَاقَتْ ضَاقَتْ

Exercise 3

حَضَرَ حَفَرَ حَضَرَ قَضَتْ قَفَّتْ مَضَّتْ حَضَارَاتٍ تَضَرَّبُ نَضَرِبُ
فَضَّلَ تَفَضَّلَ فُضِّلَ تَضَحَكَ نَضَحَكَ نَضَّرُ تَضَرَّرُ تَحَضَّرُ تَحَفَّرُ

Exercise 4

حَضَرَ تَقْضُونَ تُفَخِّمُ تَضَخُّمٌ مَضَرِبٌ مُضَافًا مُضَرًّا مَفَرًّا
مُضَحِّكٌ فَضَّلَتْ تَحَضَّرُ بَضَمَ تَفْلُونَ تَضِلُّونَ مُضَرًّا مُضَافٍ
تَضَحَكُونَ تَضَرَّمُ مُضْطَرِمٌ مُضَلَّلًا مُضَارٍ مَضْمُونٌ مُضَحِكٌ

Exercise 5

قَصَّ حَصَّ نَفَضَ نَفَضَ نَبَضَ نَفَضَ نَقَضَ نَقَضَ رَفَضَ نَابِضُ
فَصَّ نَاقِضُ حَنَّ حَصَّ حَصَّنَ نَبَضَ حَصَّ تَحَضُّ فَصَّ فَنَّ

Exercise 6

نَقَضَ تَمَضٍ حَرَضَ تَنَقَّضُ نَرُضُ مُنَاقِضُ رَقَصَنَّ
تَمَخَّضَ تَنَاقَضَ تَنَبَّضُ نَفَضَ تَنَفَّضُ نَقَضَ نَمَضَ نَمَنَّ تَرَبَّضَنَّ

Exercise 7

قَاضٍ قَرَضَ مَرَضَ مَرَضُ قَرَضُ رَاضٍ قَاضٍ قَانٍ يَحْرِضَنَّ
تَمَارَضَ قَارِضُ قَرِضٍ مُرَضٍ مُرَضٌ تَغْرِضُ تَغْرِضَنَّ

Exercise 8

مُخَاضٍ قَرَضُ قُرُوضٍ نَفْتَرِضُ مُفْتَرِضُ قُرُونٍ
مُنْقَرِضُ مَنْقُوضٍ قَاضٍ مَفْرُوضٍ مَاضٍ مُتَفَانٍ
مَرْفُوضٍ قَاضٍ قَصَّ مُتَقَاضٍ قَارِضُ رَاضٍ

The loops of saad and daad are written in exactly the same way. The dot of daad is placed above the loop after the whole joined sequence has been written. The loop of daad and that of faa' differ in that the former is larger and must be followed by a tooth; besides, the loop of daad in initial position does not have a vertical neck. Study

and trace the following examples:

ضَادُّ فَرَضَ ضَجَّ ضَخِمَ مَضَرَ عَقَرَ تَفَضَّلَ مَضْطَرَمَ

نَبَضَ رَفَضَ رَفَضَ مَضَضَ نَاقَضَ نَفَضَ رَفَضَ

خَضِبْنَا عَرَضْنَا عَرَضْتُ قَضَيْتُ خُيِّنَ

مَرَضِي فَرَضَ رَاضٍ مَخَاضٌ

Copy the following sequences in the blank lines:

ضَادُّ ضَرَّ ضَخِمَ مَضَرَ خَضِمَ نَفَضَ نَاقَضَ فَرَضَ

رَضَيْنَا رَضَيْنَا رَضَيْنَا رَضَيْنَا

Write out the following words in Arabic script:
/didda/, /taḍḥakunna/, /ḥaḍḍa/, /faaḍin/, /rafaḍa/,
/nabaḍa/, /maḍat/, /tufaḍḍilu/, /ḍarabat/, /qarḍin/,
/qaḍḍa/, /tamaaraḍa/, /ḥaḍartum/, /naabiḍun/, /ḍaabiṭan/,
/ḍaxmun/, /qaḍat/, /tamaxxaḍa/, /nafaḍat/, /nafaḍtunna/,
/rafaḍatnaa/, and /tarfuḍnanaa/.

Your teacher will dictate to you the following words
in an arbitrary sequence:

ضَبَّاطًا رَاضٍ نَبَضَ قَضَتْ مَرَضٌ تَضَرُّ
مُضْحِكٌ مُحَاصِرَةٌ تَضَامَنَ تَرْفُضُ نَفَرَضُ

The consonant /y/ is represented by the connector yaa' which is characterized by two subscript dots. Initially and medially, the basic stroke of yaa' is identical to that of baa', taa', θaa', and nuun; the flourished form of yaa' (which occurs finally and independently) has its own basic stroke.

ي ي ي ي س س س س

ب ي ن ت ت ي ب ن ت ي م ت ب ن ث ي م ي
ث ي ت ن ب ب ث ن ي ت م ث ب ن ي ت م
س س ي ن س ن س ي ي ي ي ي ي ي

Read the following exercises which provide drill on initial and medial yaa'.

Exercise 1

يَصِلُ بَصَلُ يَشْرَبُ يَتِمُّ يَصِفُ يَمُرُّ يُوصَفُ يَوْمٌ يَمُنُّ
يَدَا بُدَا يَاسِرٌ يُونَانُ يَشْكُ يَقِفُ يَا سُورِيَا زَوَايَا

Exercise 2

يُعْضِرُ قَضَايَا يَتَكَلَّمُ بَلَدًا يَلِدْنَ يَكْتُبُونَ رِيَاضٍ
وَلَايَاتٍ يَسَّرَ يُصَحِّحُ يَتَنَوَّنُونَ تَفَكَّرُ يُفَكِّرُ يَا فَا يَرْفُضُ
يُونُسُ يَدَا بَدَا يَابِسٌ بُورِكَ تُضَافُ يُضَافُ يَمُدُّ

Exercise 3

بَيْنَ بَيْتٍ بُيُوتٍ حَيْثُ قَيْدٌ سَيْرٌ سَيَّارَاتٍ سَيْفٍ
صَيْفٍ طَيْبٍ طَيْرَانُ لَيْسَ بَيْرُوتُ سَيِّدٌ حَيْشًا كَيْفَ

Exercise 4

جُيُوشٍ حُسَيْنٍ ضَيْقٌ سُيُوفًا طَيَّارًا حَيَوَانَاتٍ لَيْتَ
حَيَّارٍ صَيِّدًا تَيَمُّرٌ قَيْدٌ قُيُودًا طَيْرٌ بَيْضٌ سَيْحًا
جُيُوشٍ ضُيُوفٍ صَيَّامٍ تُرْكِيَا رُوسِيَا سَيِّدَاتٍ حَيَّارٌ

Now read the next four exercises which provide drill on final and independent yaa':

Exercise 5

كُرْسِيَّ لَقِيَ رَضِيَ كَيْ لَكَيْ حَيَّ فِي سَعِيَّ
خَفِيَ قَضِيَ تُرْكِي قَرْنَسِيَّ مُنِي خَفِيَ بُنِي

Exercise 6

قَضِيَ لُبْنَانِيَّ رَسِيَّ بُولُونِيَّ يُونَانِيَّ قَرْنَسِيَّ
سُودَانِيَّ يَمَنِيَّ مَبْنِيَّ لِيَحْيِيَّ ظَبْيِيَّ يَمَشِيَّ يَقْضِيَّ
يَمُضِيَّ كُرْسِيَّ لَكَيْ يُرْضِيَّ تُونَسِيَّ حَيَّ صَبِيَّ

Exercise 7

زِيَّ قَوِيَّ مَادِّيَّ حِدِّيَّ وَدِّيَّ ثَرِّيَّ بَدَوِيَّ سُورِيَّ نَقْدِيَّ
ثَرِّيَّ مَصْرِيَّ بَرِّيَّ كَنْدِيَّ ثَوْرِيَّ نَبِيَّ مَدَنِيَّ رِيَّ جُنْدِيَّ

Exercise 8

جَذْرِيَّ فِكْرِيَّ مَادِّيَّ جَذْرِيَّ حَضْرِيَّ سَمَاوِيَّ مَصْرِيَّ
فَرْبِيَّ صَدْرِيَّ بُولَنْدِيَّ جُنْدِيَّ قَوْرِيَّ فَطْرِيَّ نَقْدِيَّ
بَدَوِيَّ حِدِّيَّ فَخْرِيَّ قَوِيَّ مَدْرَسِيَّ مَصْرِيَّ ثَوْرِيَّ سُورِيَّ

یے یے یے یے یے یصل یقود یا یا سر لیں صیف

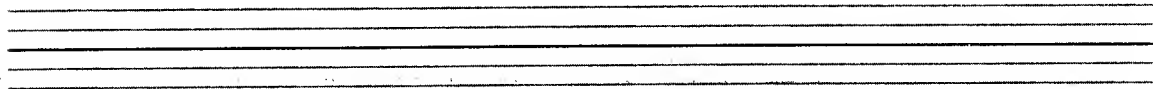
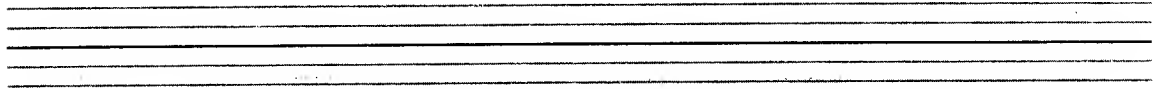
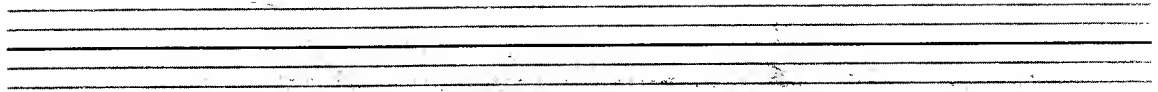
يَوْمَ نَزَّوَا كَيْفَ يَتَبَارَكُ طَيْرٌ مَيُوتُ فَطِيمٌ

بِزُورٍ يَوْمَ يَنْفَخُ بَنُوتُ حَسَدٍ كُتُبُ وَلَا يَاتُ حَبْلُ سُلَيْمَانَ

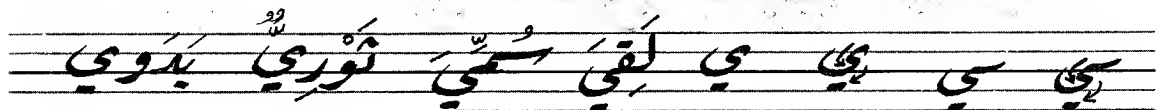
[illegible][illegible]

/laysa/, /yawman/, /riyaadun/, /suuriyaa/, /şuyuuxin/,
/ruusiyaa/, /yaşrifu/, /wilaayaatun/, /ţayyibin/, /sayyidan/,
/yarfudu/, /yadun/, /bayna/, /baytan/, /yaHşudu/, /yamallu/,

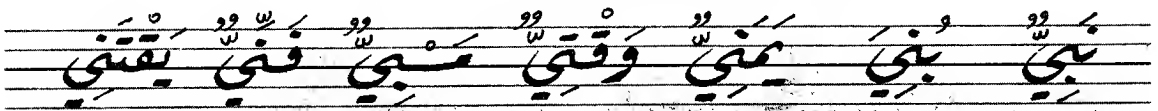
and /maymuunun/.



Flourished yaa' has its own special form in the ruq9a style (as it does in the nasx style). After the basic stroke has been completed, a short subscript line is written. Study then trace the examples below.



Before final yaa', the basic stroke of medial baa' (or of any medial letter related to baa') assumes a bridge shape.* Study and trace the following words:



*Remember that final yaa' is one of the descending letters.

Copy the following sequences in the blank lines:

رَضِيَ لَكِي رَسْمِي كَرَسِي مَحِي سُورِي مَحَرِي يَمْنِي

An initial baa' (or any initial letter related to baa') and a final yaa' combine to produce a special form. Trace the following words, then reproduce them in the blank lines:

عَرَبِي كِتَابِي ذَاتِي كُونِي وَرَاتِي

The same form of final yaa' is used after an initial faa', qaaf, kaaf, or laam. Trace the following words, then reproduce them in the blank lines:

صَدَقِي بَرَقِي رُكِّي حَالِي عَنَفِي مَنَظَقِي شَبَكِي بَصَلِي

/şadriyyun/, /rađiya/, /fařansiyyin/, /θariyyun/, /laqiya/,
/likay/, /ziyyin/, /maHalliyyun/, /jundiyyun/, /yamđiya/,
/θawriyyun/, /lubnaaniyyun/, /suuriyyin/, /manfiyyun/,
/naqdiyyun/, /tuwiya/, /mişriyyin/, /turkiyyin/, /buniya/,
/maadiyyun/, /rasmiyyun/, and /fardiyyin/.

Blank manuscript page with horizontal ruling lines.

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate the following words to you:

يَمْشِي مَنِ بَرِّي جُنْدِي ثَوْرِي رَسْمِي فَرَنْسِي سُوْرِي سَمِي يُونَانِي
كُرْسِي حَي قَوِي لَيْتَ بَيْتِ يَنَامُ شَيْخَانِ حَرْبِي بَرْقِي بَيْرُوتِي
مَحْكِي كُحُولِي تَنَاسُلِي

Review

(a) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily.





سَيَّارَاتٌ مِّنْ سُورِيَا	بَيْتٌ بَيْتًا بَيْتٌ
يَدُكَ وَيَدُكَ	جَيْبٌ جَيْبًا جَيْبٌ
بَيْرُوتٌ وَتُونِسُ	كُرْسِيٌّ كُرْسِيًّا كُرْسِيٌّ
صَفٌّ وَطَلَّابٌ	مَدَنِيٌّ مَدَنِيًّا مَدَنِيٌّ
مَقَرَّنَا وَمَقَرُّكُمْ	جَيْشٌ مِّصْرَ وَجَيْشُ سُورِيَا
مَنْدُوبٌ مِصْرِيٌّ وَمُرَاسِلَاتُ تُرْكِيَّاتٍ	جُنْدِيٌّ تُرْكِيٌّ وَضَابِطٌ مِصْرِيٌّ
مَنْدُوبُونَ مِّنْ مِّصْرَ وَمَنْدُوبَاتٌ مِّنْ تُرْكِيَا	مُرَاسِلٌ خَاصٌّ

صَدِيقُكَ مُوَضَّفٌ وَصَدِيقُنَا صُحْفِيٌّ
 مُعَرِّضٌ مَدْرَسَتِنَا مِصْرِيٌّ وَمُعَرِّضَاتُ مَدْرَسَتِكُمْ سُودَانِيَّاتٌ .
 كَيْفَ حَالُكَ؟ بِخَيْرٍ . شُكْرًا .

(b) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily; except for not being fully vocalized, they are identical to what you read in exercise (a) above.

سَيَّارَاتُ مِنْ سَوْرِيَا	بَيْتُ بَيْتَا بَيْتِ
يَدُكَ وَيَدُكَ	جَيْبُ جَيْبَا جَيْبِ
بَيْرُوتُ وَتُونُسُ	كَرْسِيٌّ كَرْسِيًّا كَرْسِيَّ
صَفٌّ وَطَلَّابٌ	مَدَنِيٌّ مَدَنِيًّا مَدَنِيَّ
مَقْرُنًا وَمَقْرُومٌ	جَيْشُ مَصْرَ وَجَيْشُ سَوْرِيَا
مَنْدُ وَبُ مَصْرِيٍّ وَمَرَا سِلَاتُ تَرْكِيَّاتُ	جَنْدِي تَرْكِيٍّ وَضَابِطُ مَصْرِيٍّ
مَنْدُ وَبُونُ مِنْ مَصْرَ وَمَنْدُ وَبَاتُ مِنْ تَرْكِيَا	مَرَا سِلِ خَاصِّ

(c) Learn to spell the items of exercise (b). Your teacher will select some of those items for dictation.

(1) The consonant /h/ is represented by the connector haa' which has four shapes in nasx printing:  (in initial position),  (in medial position),  (in final position), and  (when independent).

0 1 2 3 0 1 2 3

Circle each haa' in the following sequences:

ح ه خ ه ه ه غ ف ث ع ه و ة ب ع غ ه ص ض م
ع ه ف ن ة ظ ه ي ه س ش ص ع ه ه و ه ن ي

Read the following exercises:

Exercise 1

هَوَانٌ حَامٌ هَامٌ حَالٌ هَالٌ دَبٌّ هَبٌّ هَلٌ هَلَكٌ
هَاجٌ هَزَلِيٌّ هَجَرَ هَضَابٌ هِنْدِيٌّ هِيَ هُمْ هُنَّ هُوَ

Exercise 2

مَهْجَرٌ مَحْجُوزٌ نُهَاجِمٌ يَهُونٌ تَهْدَمُ مَهْجُورٌ
مُهْمَلٌ مُهَنْدِسٌ سَهْلٌ تَهْلَلُ مِهْمٌ سُهْلٌ
تَهَوُّرٌ مُتَهَاوِنٌ نَهَارٌ هَيَّاهُ مُهَانًا جِهَاتٌ

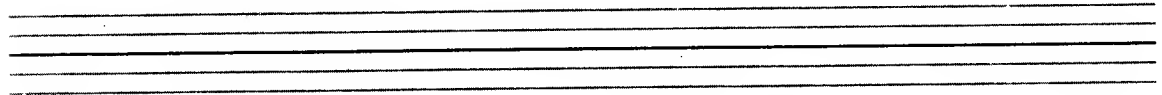
Exercise 3

لَهُ كِتَابُهُ مِنْهُ وَطَنُهُ سَيَّارَتُهُ بَيْنَهُ سَيَّارَتُهُ
كَلِمَتُهُ بَيْنَهُ مَا لَهُ قَلَمُهُ مَدْرَسَتُهُ مَذَاقُهُ

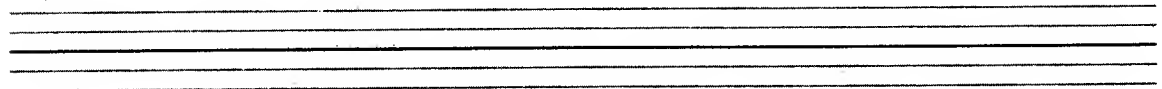
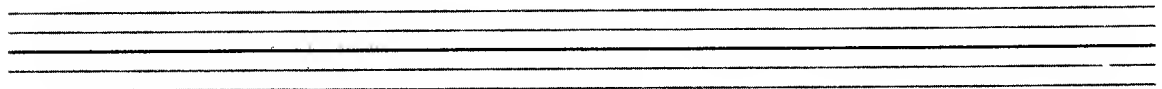
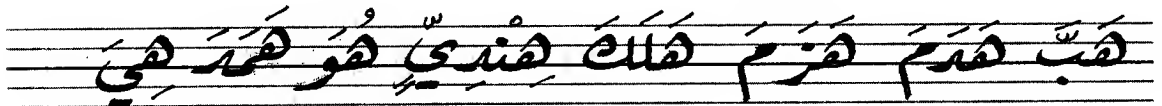
Exercise 4

لَهُمْ فَاهُ لَاهُ فَدَاهُ يَدُهُ رَفْتُهُ قَدَمُهُ
قَتْلُهُ طَارِدُهُ نَسُوهُ نَزَهُ مُتَرَهُ نَفَاهُ مَنَاهُ

(2) In ruq9a script, the writing of initial haa' requires three strokes: the first stroke is a short slanting line written upwards; the second stroke is a slightly slanted, slightly curved line written downwards; and the third stroke resembles a medial faa' (without the dot) written a very short distance to the right of the first stroke. Trace the following examples then reproduce them in the blank set of lines:

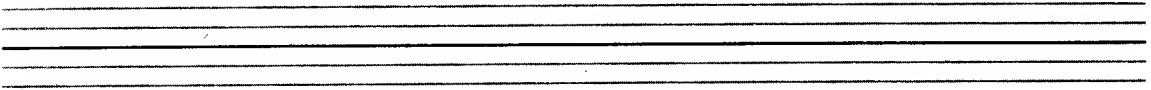
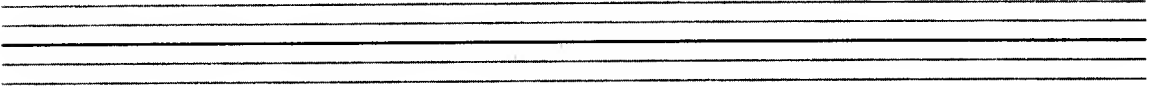


Copy the following words in the blank lines:

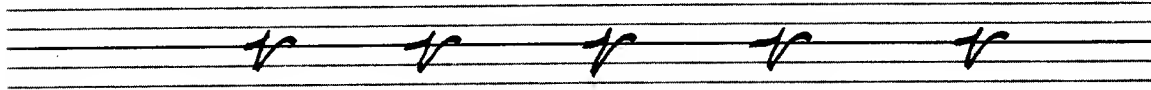


Write out the following words in Arabic script:

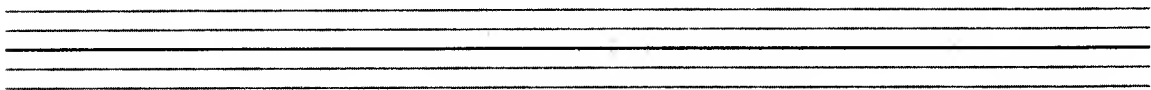
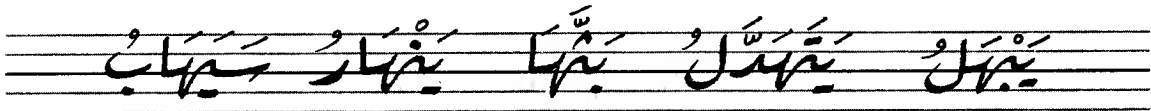
/hadama/, /halaka/, /haykalun/, /hudhudun/, /hammaani/,
/haajara/, /haama/, /hum/, and /hazama/.



Study and trace the following examples of medial haa':



The only rise which may occur before medial haa' is the bridge-shaped stroke which constitutes the positional variant of a tooth.* Trace then reproduce the following words:



*Remember that medial haa' is one of the descending letters.

صَهْلُ ضَهْدٍ ضَهَبٍ صَهَا صَهْلٌ كَهْلٌ جَهَانٌ

A word like /kahlun/ should be written neither as كَهْل (with a tooth before medial haa') nor as كَهْل (with a hump before medial haa').

Medial haa' is sometimes followed by a downward curve and other times by a tooth ; the downward curve occurs before descending letters, and the tooth occurs elsewhere. Study and trace the following examples:

مُهْمٌ تَهْمٌ قَهْرٌ تَهْيٌ تَهَابٌ فَهْدٌ صَهْلٌ

Copy the above examples in the blank lines:

By way of review, the "descending letters" are listed below:

jiim, Haa', xaa', raa', zaay, miim, medial haa', and final yaa'.

Descending letters are set off as a group by the fact that (1) a baa', a taa', a θaa', a nuun, or a yaa' which occurs before them assumes a special form,* (2) an initial jiim, an initial Haa', or an initial xaa' which precedes them assumes a special form, (3) a preceding medial haa' is joined to them by a downward curve, and (4) all consonants which precede them gain a rise in level.

Write the following words in Arabic script: /mahjaṛun/, /nahzimu/, /tahallala/, /Hamalin/, /nahṛun/, /hayhaati/, /nazala/, /taraka/, /jahṛun/, /mutahaawin/, /muhimmun/, /tahawwurun/, /manzilun/, /tahliku/, /Hajalin/, /nahjun/, /mahjaṛun/, /tantahii/, and /sahmun/.

*The only exception being that an initial baa', taa', θaa', nuun, or yaa' does not assume a special shape before raa' and zaay.

By way of review, the "descending letters" are listed below:

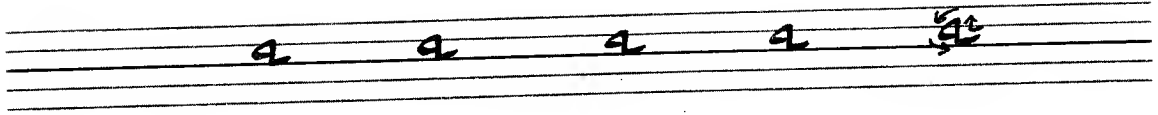
jiim, Haa', xaa', raa', zaay, miim, medial haa', and final yaa'.

Descending letters are set off as a group by the fact that (1) a baa', a taa', a θaa', a nuun, or a yaa' which occurs before them assumes a special form,* (2) an initial jiim, an initial Haa', or an initial xaa' which precedes them assumes a special form, (3) a preceding medial haa' is joined to them by a downward curve, and (4) all consonants which precede them gain a rise in level.

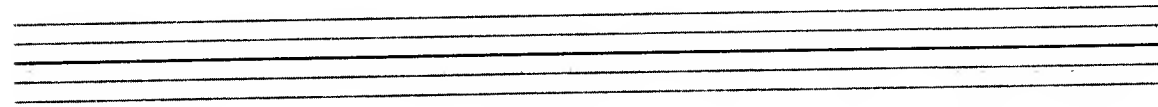
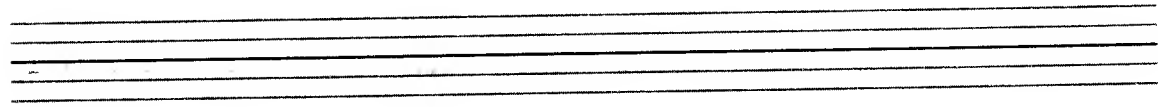
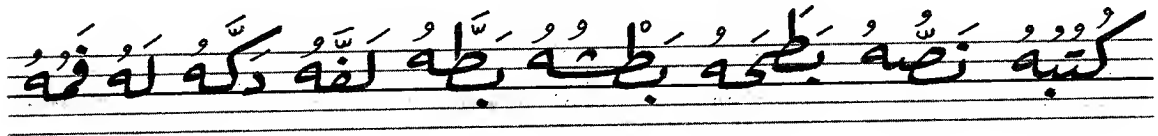
Write the following words in Arabic script: /mahjaṛun/, /nahzimu/, /tahallala/, /Hamalin/, /nahṛun/, /hayhaati/, /nazala/, /taraka/, /jahṛun/, /mutahaawin/, /muhimmun/, /tahawwurun/, /manzilun/, /tahliku/, /Hajalin/, /nahjun/, /mahjaṛun/, /tantahii/, and /sahmun/.

*The only exception being that an initial baa', taa', θaa', nuun, or yaa' does not assume a special shape before raa' and zaay.

Study and trace the following examples of final haa':

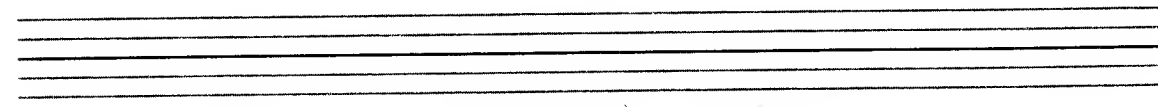
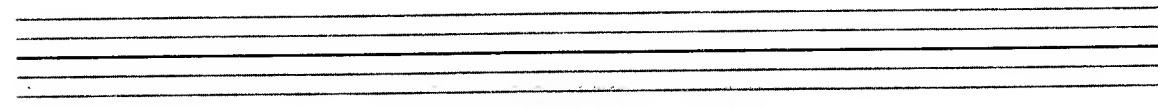


Copy the following words in the blank lines:



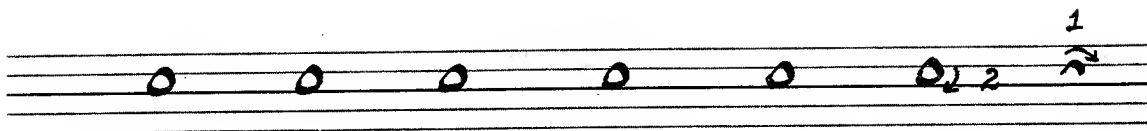
Write out the following words in Arabic script:

/kitaabuhu/, /waṭanuhu/, /sayyaaratuhu/, /baytuhu/,
/maaluhu/, /qalamuhu/, /ibnahu/, and /kalimatuhu/.

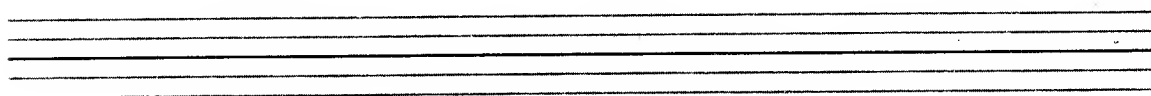
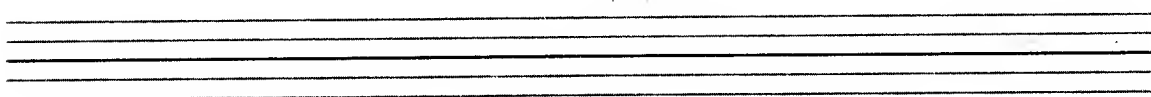


Independent haa' is a circular stroke whose upper half is narrower (and therefore more curved) than the lower half.

Study then trace the examples below:

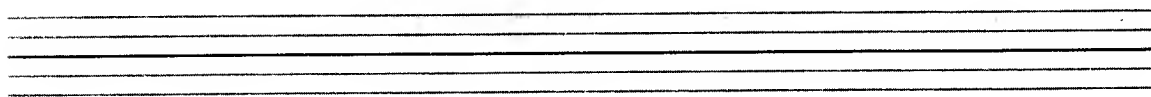


Copy the following sequence in the blank sets of lines:



Write out the following words in Arabic script:

/faahu/, /afwaahun/, /fidaahu/, /yaduhu/, /qawwaahu/,
/nafaahu/, and /bilaaduhu/.



Dictation

The following words have haa' in all possible positions; your teacher will dictate them to you in an arbitrary sequence.

هَامُ تَهْلِكُ وَطَنُهُ فِدَاهُ تَنْتَهِي سَيَّارَتُهُ كُتُبُهُ بِهَا سَهَرُ هَزْلِيُّ بَيْتُهُ
قَدَّمَهُ تَهَوُّرُ يَرْثُهَا مِنْهُمْ مُهْمٌ هَلَكَ كَرَهُ هَدَاهُ مَهْدَ تَهَابُ يَهُونُ

The letter "yaa' " as representation of vowel length

In addition to representing the consonant /y/, the letter yaa' represents vowel length. The yaa' represents vowel length when it (a) has no sakl* and (b) follows a kasra; otherwise it represents the consonant /y/. Thus /fiilun/, /Hiinun/, and /niirun/ are written as follows:

فِيلٌ حِينٌ نِيرٌ

Read aloud the following words in which the yaa' represents vowel length:

تَيْنٌ دَيْنٌ رَيْمٌ صَيْتٌ طَيْبٌ رَيْفٌ رِيكٌ
مُشِيرٌ بَشِيرٌ مُنْدِيلٌ نَحِيبٌ تَلْمِيزٌ فَرِيدٌ سَلِيمٌ
حَكِيمٌ كَبِيرٌ قَرِيبٌ صَغِيرٌ فَرِيقٌ قَدِيرٌ جَمِيلٌ
صَدِيقٌ طَوِيلٌ جَدِيدٌ مَنَارِيلُ مَصَابِيحُ مُسْتَزِيدٌ

فِي لِي بِي مَيِّ مَكْتَبِي تَلْمِيزِي كِتَابِي
صَدِيقِي مُنْدِيلِي دِينِي مَصَابِيحِي بَسَاتِينِي
دِينَارِي مِيلَارِي فَنَاجِيْنِي تَلَامِيزِي قِيثَارَتِي

*The term sakl (plural: askaal) denotes a short vowel symbol.

In some of the following words the yaa' represents vowel length and in others it represents the consonant /y/. Read the words aloud:

كَيْرٌ حَيْشٌ مَرِيضٌ وَزِيرٌ طَيَّارٌ يَدٌ ظَرِيفٌ
 سُيُوفٌ بَيْرُوتُ سَيِّدٌ مُقِيمٌ نِيَامًا قِيلَ حَبِيبٌ
 فَنِي رَبِّي تُرْبِي سُوْدَانِي كَيْفَ سَيِّدٌ حَيًّا تَنْتَهِي
 تَشْتَرِي تَشْتَرِي نَخْتَفِي نَخْتَفِي نَحْتَمِي نَحْتَمِي نَبْنِي

Study the following sets of words:

رَاحٌ	رُوحٌ	رِيحٌ	نَارٌ	نُورٌ	نِيرٌ
رَاحٍ	رُوحٌ	رِيحٌ	نَارٌ	نُورٌ	نِيرٌ
رَاحًا	رُوحٌ	رِيحًا	نَارًا	نُورٌ	نِيرٌ
	رُوحٌ		نَارٌ	نُورٌ	
	رُوحٌ			نُورٌ	
	رَاحٌ			مَنُورٌ	
	رَواحٌ			نَوَّارٌ	

Write out the following words in Arabic script:
/nadiimun/, /musayyarun/, /masiirun/, /tanaabiilu/,
/yuqaayida/, /qaayada/, /madrasatii/, /tajniya/, /tajnii/,
/najiibun/, /daftarii/, /fanaajiinii/, /masaamiirii/,
/kitaabii/, /muṣiirun/, /safiirun/, /jaybii/, /yamḍii/,
and /mudarrisatii/.

The letter "9ayn"

(1) The consonant /9/ is represented by the connector 9ayn which has four shapes in nasx printing: ۹ (in initial position), ۹ (when independent), ۹ (in medial position), and ۹ (in final position).

Study the following examples of 9ayn:

ع م ع ع م ع ع م ع

Circle each 9ayn in the following sequences:

ب ب ج ص ع ا ف ع ق ص ع ط ل م ك ع ف ع ث
ع ع م ع ك ث ع م ب ع ص س ع ع ح ف ع ص ع

Read the following exercises:

Exercise 1

حَنَّ عَنْ مَنْ عَوَّنَ عَرَبٍ وَعَدَّ عَهْدٍ
رَعَدَ عِنْدَهُ خَلَبَ عَنِيدٌ عَارِفٍ عَجُوزَ عَبْدِهِ

Exercise 2

قَاعِ نَاحِ يُوَزَعُ مُوزَعٌ مُسَرَّعٌ سِبَاعِ مَسَاعِ هُجُوعِ رُجُوعِ نُزُوعِ فُرُوعِ
مَتَاعٌ مَبَاعِ سَمَاعِ سَمَاحِ زَرْعٌ جَاعِ رُجُوعِ رُجُوحِ شُرُوعِ شُرُوحِ سَاعِ

Exercise 3

يَعِينُ يُسْعِدُ يُسَدِّدُ يَعْبُدُ مَعَامِلُ بَعِيدُ مَلْعَبٌ جَعَلَ جَعَلَ
تَعَارَكَ يُتَعَبُ يَقُولُ يَحُولُ يُؤَلِّ تَعَسَّ سَعِيرٌ سَفِيرٌ سَمِيرٌ
سَفَرٍ يَضُدُ يَضَعُدُ حَقْلٌ بَعِيرٌ بَصِيرٌ تَعَهَّدَهُ يَقُولُ

Exercise 4

خَلَعَ مَرَجٌ يُرَجُّ يَنْلَعُ يَقْطَعُ يَقَعُ وَقَعٌ
يَسَعُ يَسْمَعُ يَسْمَحُ يَبِيعُ فَظِيعٌ سَبَعٌ فَرَقَعُ
سَرِيعٌ رَبِيعٌ بَدِيعٌ سَمِيعٌ هَجَعٌ هَجِيعٌ مَهَجَعٌ

(2) The ruq9a-style 9ayn is similar to its counterpart in nasx printing. Trace the following examples of initial 9ayn, then reproduce them in the blank lines:

ع ع عَبْدٌ عَامٌ عَجِيبٌ مَمْنُونًا رُبَاعِيٌّ

Blank lines for tracing and reproduction of the initial 9ayn examples.

Independent 9ayn is written in two strokes: the first stroke is identical to initial 9ayn while the second stroke is a long, curved tail similar to that of jiim, Haa', and xaa'. Trace the following examples then copy them in the blank lines:

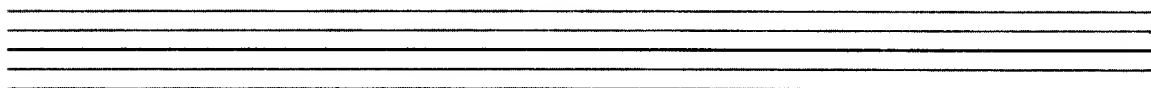
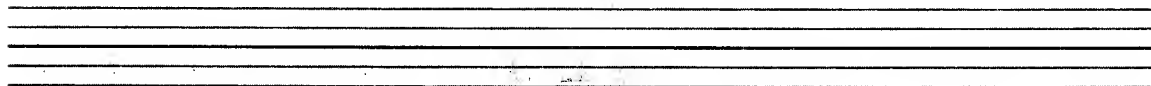
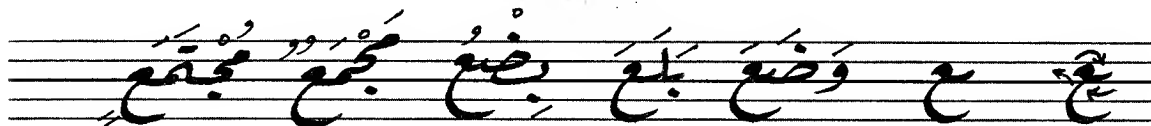
ع رَاع يَدُع دُمُوعٌ بَارِعٌ زُرْعٌ

Trace the following examples of medial 9ayn, then copy them in the blank lines:

عَفَا يَعِيْدُ يَفْعَلُ نَعِيْرٌ نَفِيْرٌ نَصِيْرٌ

Notice that, unlike medial faa' and medial ṣaad, medial ḡayn is blocked; besides, the somewhat triangular shape of medial ḡayn contrasts with the oblong circles of medial faa' and medial ṣaad.

Final ḡayn is written in two strokes: the first is identical to medial ḡayn; the second is a long, curved tail similar to that of independent ḡayn. Trace the following examples, then copy them in the blank lines:



Dictation

The following words contain ḡayn in all possible positions; your teacher will dictate them to you in an arbitrary sequence:

عَنْ وَعَدٍ عِنْدَ عَرُوسٍ رَاعٍ عَجَبٌ سَبْعًا رُجُوعٍ شُرُوعٍ مَعَامِلُ يَضَعُ
مَلْعَبًا مُجْتَمَعٍ جَعَلَ سَعِيرٌ يَقُولُ بَعِيدٌ رَبِيعٌ يُعِيدُ سَبْعٌ سَرِيعٌ

(1) The consonant /g/ is represented by the connector gayn which has four shapes in nasx printing: غ (in initial position), غ (when independent), ف (in medial position), and غ (in final position). Notice that the only difference between 9ayn and gayn is the suprascript dot of the latter.

غ غ غ غ غ غ غ غ غ غ

ع ف غ خ غ ض ع خ م خ ف ف ت خ غ خ غ ز و ض و و غ ف و غ
ع خ م ف ف ن ض غ ف م خ غ غ م ز ض ف خ غ ض ت خ غ
ف م ن غ خ غ م ح ع غ

Exercise 1

عَلِبْتُ عَسَلَ فَرَسَ عَرَسَ عَدَرَ رَعَدَ رَقَدَ وَغَدَ وَفَدَ
غَاظَلَ غَيَّيَ فَيَّيَ غَيَّيَ غَيَّمَ غَمَّ غَرَّ غَفَرَ صَفَرَ
غَفِيرًا غَمَرَ خَبَرَ غَجَرَ غَفُورًا عَابَ غَابَ حَابَ غَرِيبًا

Exercise 2

صَبَّاغٌ بَلَّاغٌ يُسَاعُ يُصَاعُ صَوُّغٌ بَاغٌ بَاعٌ نَاخٌ
دَبَّاغٌ فَرَّاغٌ بَلَّاغٌ قَرَّاغٌ قَرَّحٌ يَزُوغُ قَرَّحٌ بُلُوغٌ

Exercise 3

تَقَرَّبُ تَضَرَّبُ يُغِيثُ يَتَغَامَزُ يَتَصَافَرُ يَغْدُرُ يَضْرِبُهَا يَفْسِلُهُ يُلْغِيهَا
يَغْفِرُهُ يَعْرِفُ يَفْتَحُ يَغْدُو يَغْدُو يَفُوصُ يَفُورُ تَتَغَلَّبُ

Exercise 4

بَلَّغَ بَلَّغَ بَلَّحَ نَبَّغَ نَبَّغَ نَبَّعَ يُسَبِّغُ تَبَّغَ يَبْلُغُ
يَدْمَغُ يَصْبِغُ صَبَّغَ صَبَّغَ تَابَعَ تَابَعَ تَابَعَ مَبْلَغٌ صَابِغٌ

(2) To write gayn, one writes 9ayn and adds a dot on top of it (if gayn is joined to a following letter, the dot is added after writing the whole connected sequence).
Copy the following words in the blank lines:

غَلَبَهَا غَمٌّ غَضَبًا غَمَطٌ يَغْزِلُ يُغْضِبُهُ نَغْمٌ

بَلَّغْ مَضَعْ صَمَّعْ بُلُوعْ فَرَاغْ بَلَاغْ

Dictation

The following words contain gayn in all possible positions; your teacher will dictate them to you in an arbitrary sequence.

غَسَلَ غَلَبَ غَنِيَّ غَابَ بَلَاغَ قَرَاغَ يَزُوعُ بُلُوعًا يَغِيبُ
يَقْدُرُ تَتَقَلَّبُ يَفُورُ يَغْفِرُهُ مَبْلَغٌ مَبْلَغٌ صَمَّعَ صَمَّعًا

Review

(a) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily.

قَصِيرٌ طَوِيلٌ هُمْ هُنَّ مُعَلِّمَاتٌ تَلْمِذَاتٌ عَسَكَرِيٌّ هِيَ عَرِيفٌ فَرِيقٌ
عَقِيدٌ هَامٌ بَيْتُهَا بُيُوتٌ لَيْبِيٌّ عِرَاقِيٌّ بَغْدَادُ مُعَسَكِرَاتٍ

هَلْ فَنَجَانُكَ هُنَا ؟	لَا . هُوَ هُنَاكَ .
هَلْ فَنَجَانُكَ كَبِيرٌ ؟	لَا . فَنَجَانِي صَغِيرٌ .
مُنْدِيلُ مَنْ ذَاكَ ؟	ذَاكَ مُنْدِيلِي .
هَلْ قَرِيدٌ تَلْمِيزٌ فِي صَقِّكَ ؟	نَعَمْ . وَهُوَ صَدِيقِي .
وَبَشِيرٌ ؟	بَشِيرٌ ضَابِطٌ فِي مَعْشَرٍ بَعِيدٍ مِنْ هُنَا .
هَلْ خَرِيطَتُكَ هُنَا ؟	نَعَمْ . هِيَ هُنَا .
هَلْ فَنَجَانُ سَلِيمٍ جَدِيدٌ ؟	لَا . فَنَجَانُهُ قَدِيمٌ .
هَلْ صَدِيقُكَ مُرَاسِلٌ مَعْرُوفٌ ؟	هُوَ مُرَاسِلٌ عَرَبِيٌّ مَشْهُورٌ .
هَلْ مَكْتَبُهُ قَرِيبٌ مِنْ مَكْتَبِكَ ؟	نَعَمْ . مَكْتَبُهُ قَرِيبٌ مِنْ مَكْتَبِي .
هَلْ نَحِيبٌ مُعَلِّمٌ ؟	لَا . هُوَ تَلْمِيزٌ هُنَا .
هَلْ عِنْدَكَ كِتَابٌ ؟	نَعَمْ . عِنْدِي كِتَابٌ .
هَلْ عِلْمُ تُرْكِيَا جَمِيلٌ ؟	نَعَمْ . عِلْمُهَا جَمِيلٌ .
وَعِلْمُ لِيْبِيَا ؟	عِلْمُ لِيْبِيَا جَمِيلٌ .
شُكْرًا .	عَفْوًا .

هَلْ فِي صَفِّكَ طُلَّابٌ لِيَبِيَّاتٌ؟ هَلْ فِي صَفِّكَ عِرَاقِيُونَ وَعِرَاقِيَّاتٌ؟

مَنْ مُسَاعِدُكَ؟ وَمَنْ مُسَاعِدُهُ؟ هَلْ مُسَاعِدُهُ مِنْ تُرْكِيَا؟

هَلْ فِي مَدْرَسَتِكَ مُعَلِّمُونَ مِصْرِيُّونَ وَمُعَلِّمَاتٌ مِصْرِيَّاتٌ؟ هَلْ مُعَلِّمُو مَدْرَسَتِكَ مَشْهُورُونَ؟
وَهَلْ مُعَلِّمَاتُهَا مَشْهُورَاتٌ؟

هُمْ مُوظَّفُونَ جُدُّ وَهْنٌ مُوظَّفَاتٌ جَدِيدَاتٌ.

طُلَّابٌ صَفِّي كَثِيرُونَ. مَدْرَسُ صَفِّي عِرَاقِيٌّ. هُمْ قَدِيرُونَ وَهْنٌ قَدِيرَاتٌ.

فِي مِصْرٍ صُحُفِيُّونَ مَعْرُوفُونَ وَصُحُفِيَّاتٌ مَعْرُوفَاتٌ.

(b) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily; except for not being fully vocalized, they are identical to what you read in exercise (a).

قصيرٌ طويلٌ هم هنّ معلماتٌ تلميذاتٌ عسكريٌّ هي عريفٌ

فريقٌ عقيدٌ هامٌ بيتها بيوتٌ لبيٌّ عراقيٌّ بغدادٌ معسكراتٌ

هل فنجانك هنا ؟ لا . هو هناك .

هل فنجانك كبير ؟ لا . فنجاني صغير .

منديل من ذاك ؟ ذاك منديلي .

هل فريد تلميذ في صفك ؟ نعم . وهو صديقي .

وبشير ؟ بشير ضابط في معسكر بعيد من هنا .

هل خريطتك هنا ؟ نعم . هي هنا .

هل فنجان سليم جديد ؟ لا . فنجانه قديم .

هل صديقك مراسل معروف ؟ هو مراسل عربي مشهور .

هل مكتبه قريب من مكتبك ؟ نعم . مكتبه قريب من مكتبي .

هل نجيب معلم ؟ لا . هو تلميذ هنا .

هل عندك كتاب ؟ نعم . عندي كتاب .

هل علم تركيا جميل ؟ نعم . علمها جميل .

وعلم ليبيا ؟ علم ليبيا جميل .

شكراً . عفواً .

هل في صَفِّكَ طَلَّابٌ لِيَبَيِّنُوا وَطَالِبَاتٌ لِيَبَيِّنَات؟ هل في صَفِّكَ عِرَاقِيُونَ وَعِرَاقِيَّات؟

مَنْ مَسَاعِدُكَ؟ وَمَنْ مَسَاعِدُهُ؟ هل مَسَاعِدُهُ مِنْ تَرْكِيَا؟

هل في مَدْرَسَتِكَ مَعْلَمُونَ مَصْرِيُونَ وَمَعْلَمَاتٌ مَصْرِيَّات؟ هل مَعْلَمُو مَدْرَسَتِكَ مَشْهُورُونَ؟

وهل مَعْلَمَاتُهَا مَشْهُورَات؟





هم مَوْظَفُونَ جُدُّ وَهَنَ مَوْظَفَاتٌ جَدِيدَات.

طَلَّابُ صَفِّي كَثِيرُونَ. مَدْرَسُ صَفِّي عِرَاقِي. هم قَدِيرُونَ وَهَنَ قَدِيرَات.

في مَصْرَ صَحْفِيُونَ مَعْرُوفُونَ وَصَحْفِيَّاتٌ مَعْرُوفَات.

(c) Learn to spell the items of exercise (b). Your teacher will select some of those items for dictation.

The letter "taa' marbuuṭa"

You have already learned that the letter taa' (whose flourished form is ) represents /t/. There is, however, another symbol which represents /t/: that symbol is called taa' marbuuṭa and occurs only at the end of a word; it has two shapes which, except for their suprascript dots, are identical to final and independent haa'. In general, words which end in taa' marbuuṭa are feminine. Ancient Arabs usually pronounced such words with /-ah/ before a pause--which explains the similarity between the two shapes of taa' marbuuṭa and the two corresponding shapes of haa'. (In modern pronunciation, the picture is somewhat different: if the words in question are nominative or genitive, the pausal form in each instance may end either in /-a/ or in /-ah/, the latter termination characterizing the speech of purists; if the words in question are accusative, the pausal form usually ends in /-an/. Thus before a pause, each of the forms  and  may be pronounced either as /madrasa/ or as /madrasah/, while the form  is usually pronounced as /madrasatan/).

Study the following examples of final taa' marbuuṭa:

ة ة ة ة ة

Study the following examples of independent taa' marbuuṭa:

ة ة ة ة ة

Circle each taa' marbuuṭa in the sequences below:

ه ط ه ق ه ت ه ة ق ه ق ه ف ه ه
ق ه ض ه ق ه ت ه ة ه ه ق ه ق ه ه
ق ه ة ه ه و ت ه ه ق ه ق ه ه ه

Read the following exercises:

Exercise 1

قَلِيلَةٌ قَلِيلُهُ طَوِيلَةٌ سَاعَةٌ دَقِيقَةٌ ثَانِيَةٌ قَدِيمُهُ قَدِيمَةٌ قُنْبَلَةٌ
جَمِيلَةٌ لُغَةٌ لَيْلَةٌ لَيْلُهُ خَمْسَةٌ سَنَةٌ سَنُهُ مَدْرَسَةٌ سَهْلَةٌ بَحْرِيَّةٌ

Exercise 2

قَرِيَّةٌ عُرْفَةٌ صَلَةٌ صَفَةٌ صَعْفٌ صَعْفٌ جَوِّيَّةٌ جَامِعَةٌ سَفِينَةٌ
ثَلَاثَةٌ ثَمَانِيَّةٌ سَلَامَةٌ سَلَامٌ رَحْلَةٌ دَوْلَةٌ خَفِيعَةٌ ثَقِيلَةٌ
حُكُومَةٌ حُكْمٌ مَدِينَةٌ عَسْكَرِيَّةٌ بَرِّيَّةٌ بَدَلَةٌ تُكْنَى وَرَقَةٌ صَعْبَةٌ

Pronounce the non-pausal and then the pausal form of each word given below:

كَبِيرَةٌ كَثِيرَةٌ مَرَّةٌ جَرِيدَةٌ وَحْدَةٌ وَاحِدَةٌ
قَصِيرَةٌ جَدِيدَةٌ صَغِيرَةٌ عَشْرَةٌ مَرَّةٌ قُوَّةٌ

In تَلْمِيذًا , كِتَابًا , بُيُوتًا , etc., the two fatHa's are followed by an alif; this is because Ancient Arabs (who developed the writing system) usually pronounced such forms with /-aa/ before a pause. On the other hand, forms like مَدْرَسَةٌ , تَلْمِيذَةٌ , and مُحَاضَرَةٌ were not commonly pronounced with /-aa/ before a pause; for this reason they have no alif after the two fatHa's.

Read the following words (remember that the final /-an/ of each word may occur before a pause):

قَهْوَةٌ مَشَاءٌ خَوْنَةٌ طَيَّارَةٌ سَيَّارَةٌ حِجَارَةٌ جَمِيلَةٌ
حُفْرَةٌ وَسَادَةٌ مَدْرَسَةٌ حَاضِرَةٌ مُحَاضَرَةٌ مُرَاسِلَةٌ عَادَةٌ
جَرِيدَةٌ مُرَضَّةٌ عِيَادَةٌ قَاعِدَةٌ تَلْمِيذَةٌ ظَرِيفَةٌ مَكْتَبَةٌ

When a word ending in taa' marbuuṭa is expanded by the addition of at least one letter, the taa' marbuuṭa is replaced by ت or ـت (depending on whether the preceding letter is a non-connector or a connector). Compare, for example, جَرِيدَةٌ 'newspaper' with جَرِيدَتُهُ 'his newspaper', and رَحْلَةٌ 'journey' with رَحْلَتُنَا 'our journey'.

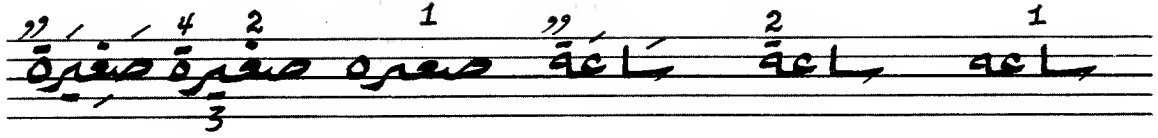
Read the following pairs of words:

مَدْرَسَةٌ	دَوْلَةٌ	حُكُومَةٌ	قَاعِدَةٌ	سَيَّارَةٌ	مَدِينَةٌ
مَدْرَسَتُنَا	دَوْلَتُكُمْ	حُكُومَتُهُمْ	قَاعِدَتُكُمْ	سَيَّارَتُكُمْ	مَدِينَتُهُ
غُرْفَةٌ	قَهْوَةٌ	بُنْدُ قِيَةٍ	نُكْنَةٌ	عَوْدَةٌ	مُحَاصَرَةٌ
غُرْفَتُهُمْ	قَهْوَتَهَا	بُنْدُ قِيَتِهِ	نُكْنَتُهُمْ	عَوْدَتَنَا	مُحَاصَرَتَكَ
خَبْرَةٌ	مَكْتَبَةٌ	لُفَّةٌ	جَامِعَةٌ	سَفِينَةٌ	بَدَلَةٌ
خَبْرَتِهِ	مَكْتَبَتِهِمْ	لُفَّتِهِمْ	جَامِعَتِنَا	سَفِينَتِنَا	بَدَلَتِهِ

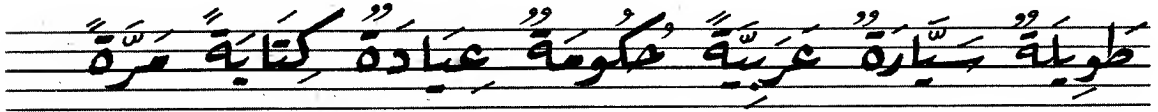
In some vocabulary lists, a modified version of the Roman alphabet is used to transcribe Arabic items, and the final t of certain words is placed within parentheses; e.g., madrassa(t), tilmiida(t), and muHaaḍara(t). The parentheses mean that each of the words in question has two forms: a pausal form which ends before the specified t, and a non-pausal form which includes the specified t. Such a t corresponds to the taa' marbuuṭa of Arabic script.

(2) To write taa' marbuuṭa, one simply makes a final or an independent haa' (depending on whether the preceding letter is a connector or a nonconnector) and adds a short horizontal stroke above it. Study the following examples

then trace them:



Copy the following words in the blank lines:



Write out the following words in Arabic script (the Arabic representation of each word ends in a taa' marbuuṭa): /qahwatin/, /wisaadatan/, /haammaturun/, /sanatan/, /qadiimatun/, /ṭawiilatin/, /jadiidatin/, /qaliilatan/, /kaṭiiratan/, /qaṣiiraturun/, /dawlatin/, /muddatin/, /maṣṣatan/, /ṣaḡbatan/, /Hayaatan/, and

/nubuwwatun/.

Write out the following pairs of words in Arabic script:

/jariidatun/, /jariidatuhu/
/kitaabatun/, /kitaabatuhaa/
/sayyaaratun/, /sayyaaratuhum/
/dawlatun/, /dawlatukum/
/madrasatun/, /madrasatii/

The symbol "alif maqṣuura"

(1) There are cases when word-final /-aa/ is represented not by a fatHa and a following alif, but by a fatHa and a following symbol called alif maqṣuura. Except for not having two subscript dots, alif maqṣuura is identical to the flourished form of yaa'. Study the examples below:

ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي

Circle each alif maqṣuura in the sequence below:

ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي ي

Read the following two exercises:

Exercise 1

مَتَّى يَرَى تَرَى نَرَى جَرَى لَدَى صُفْرَى لَيْلَى يَسْعَى يَنْهَى
سَعَى يُسَعَى يُنَادَى كُبْرَى سَوَى بَنَى نَادَى يُبْنَى يُنَمَّى

Exercise 2

تَسْنَى يَتَسَنَّى تَبْنَى تَتَبْنَى حَادَى مَتَّى
وُسْطَى يُمْنَى يُسْرَى وَلَّى تَوَالَى يَبْقَى تَبْقَى عَلَى

You have already learned that, together with two preceding fatHa's, a final alif represents the ending /-an/; e.g., بُيُوتًا 'houses (accusative)' is pronounced as

/buyuutan/. Together with two preceding fatHa's, alif maqṣuura has a similar designation; thus مَعْنَى 'meaning' is pronounced as /ma9nan/. Below are more examples:

قَرَى هَذَى مُسْتَشْفَى مَدَى مَقْبَى مَجْرَى نَدَى

While words ending in ا are accusative, those ending in ي may be nominative, genitive, or accusative. In this context, ي is a replacement of ي, ي, or يَا.

2 (a). Words ending in /-aa/ are a spelling problem because they require a choice between ا and ي. Most of those words are spelt in accordance with the rules stated below:

(i) The final /-aa/ is represented by ا in foreign proper nouns (e.g., فَرَنْسَا 'France', تُرْكِيَا 'Turkey', سُوَيْسَرَا 'Switzerland') and in grammatical forms* (e.g., لَا 'No', مَا 'what', هُمَا 'both of them', ذَا 'this'). Some common exceptions are the grammatical forms مَتَى 'when', عَلَى 'on', and حَتَّى 'until'.

In a minimal word which is neither a foreign name nor a grammatical form, the representation of final /-aa/ depends partly on the length of the word:

(ii) In a trilateral minimal word,** a final

*The vocabulary items of any language fall into two classes: the grammatical and the lexical. In Modern Standard Arabic, the first class includes particles, personal pronouns, and demonstratives, while the second class includes verbs, nouns, and adjectives.

**A "minimal word" is the smallest form which can occur by itself; it excludes such affixes as the definite article, bound (i.e., inseparable) particles, and the dual suffix (represented by ا). The length of a given minimal word is defined as the number of Arabic letters which constitute that word; in this context, a letter which has a sadda counts as two letters: thus رَجَا, بَكَى, and يُرَبِّي consist of three, four, and five letters respectively.

/-aa/ which manifests the root consonant /w/ is represented by اَ (e.g., سَلَا , شَكَا , دَعَا , خَلَا , مَحَا , دَنَا); one which manifests the root consonant /y/ is represented by يَ (e.g., قَدَى , سَعَى , لَوَى , بَكَى , رَمَى).

(iii) In a minimal word which exceeds three letters, final /-aa/ is represented by اَ if the penultimate letter is yaa' (e.g., يَسْتَحْيَا , دُنْيَا , زَوَايَا , عَلَيَا) and by يَ if the penultimate letter is not yaa' (e.g., يَدْعَى , يُخْلَى , تَسَاوَى , يُسْتَدْعَى , يُشْتَكَى , سَلَّى , كَسَالَى , كُبْرَى , صُفْرَى , يُمَحَى).

Learners are often unable to determine the last root consonant of a minimal word whose pronunciation ends in /-aa/ and whose Arabic representation consists of three letters; in regard to their spelling, minimal words of this kind must therefore be learned as items. In addition, exceptions to the above rules must be learned as items.

It must be emphasized that medial /aa/ is always represented by اَ :

قَامَ مَكَانٌ سَلَامٌ قَاهِرٌ رَاوَدَ

شَكَا : شَكَاهُ دَعَا : دَعَاهُ

قَدَى : قَدَاهُ بَكَى : بَكَاهُ

(b). Writing the alif maqṣuura consists of writing a flourished yaa' without a subscript horizontal stroke.

Copy the following words in the blank lines:

مَتَى مَغْنَى وَنَطَى سَوَى عَلَى مَقَرِّى كُبْرَى

Write out the following words in Arabic script (each word ends in alif maqṣuura): /naadaa/, /ṣuḡraa/, /bakaa/, /tasannaa/, /yabqaa/, /tujraa/, /ʕalaa/, /yusammaa/, /taʕaalaa/, /maḍaa/, /naṛaa/, quran/, /maʕnan/, /hudan/, and /maqhan/.

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate to you the following word
(all of which end in alif maqṣuura):

جَرَى مَتَى عَلَى كُبْرَى تُسَمَّى سَوَى وَسطَى نَرَى تَبْقَى مَجْرَى مَعْنَى

The "dagger alif"

(1) You are already familiar with two representations for the long vowel /-aa/; those are اَ and اِ. In some instances, the vowel /aa/ is represented by a short vertical stroke (known as the "dagger alif") written above the consonant symbol. Placing the dagger alif above a consonant symbol means that the consonant is followed (in pronunciation) by /aa/. Only a handful of words are written with a dagger alif, but some of those words occur very frequently; for example, the word /haadaa/ 'this' is written with a dagger alif above its haa:

هَذَا هَذَا هَذَا هَذَا هَذَا

Read the following exercise:

هَذَا هَذِهِ هَذَانِ هَذَيْنِ ذَلِكَ لِذَلِكَ
هَكَذَا لَكِنْ لَكِنَّ لَكِنَّهَا لَكِنَّهُمْ كَذَلِكَ

In unvocalized and partly-vocalized texts, the dagger alif is usually omitted. Read the following examples:

هَذَا هَذِهِ هَذَانِ هَذَيْنِ ذَلِكَ لِذَلِكَ
هَكَذَا لَكِنْ لَكِنَّ لَكِنَّهَا لَكِنَّهُمْ كَذَلِكَ

(2) Dagger alif has the same shape in nasx printing and ruq9a script. Study and trace the words below:

هَذَا هَذَا ذَلِكْ ذَلِكْ لَكِنْ هَذِهِ كَذَلِكَ

Copy the following words in the blank lines:

لَكِنَّهُمْ هَذَيْنِ هَكَذَا هَذَا كَذَلِكَ هَذِهِ

Write out the following words in Arabic script (if necessary, you may refer to the preceding materials):
/laakin/, /haadihi/, /lidaalika/, /haakaadaa/, /haadaa/,
/kadaalika/, /laakinnahu/, /haadayni/, /laakinnahaa/,

and /haadaani/.

Review

(a) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily.

هَذِهِ مَمْلَكَةٌ مَلِكُهَا رَجُلٌ قَدِيرٌ وَحُكُومَتُهَا دِيمُقْرَاطِيَّةٌ.

خَرِيطَةُ مِصْرَ هُنَاكَ .

طُلَّابِي مِنْ مَدِينَةِ دِمَشْقَ عَاصِمَةِ سُورِيَا .

كِتَابِي عَلَى طَاوِلَةِ مُعَلِّمِي .

هَذِهِ مُمَرِّضَةٌ سُودَانِيَّةٌ وَتِلْكَ طَالِبَةٌ عِرَاقِيَّةٌ.

هَذَا صَاحِبُ كَبِيرٍ مِنْ قَاعِدَةٍ قَرِيبَةٍ ، وَهُوَ رَجُلٌ قَدِيرٌ.

مَا رُتِبْتُ صَدِيقَكَ عَلَيَّ ؟ هُوَ عَقِيدٌ .

قَاهِرٌ تَلْمِيزٌ فِي مَدْرَسَةٍ قَرِيبَةٍ مِنْ هُنَا ، وَفَرِيدَةٌ تَلْمِيزَةٌ فِي مَدْرَسَةٍ بَعِيدَةٍ مِنْ هُنَا .
سُوْرَانٌ مُرَاسِلَةٌ جَرِيدَةٍ مِصْرِيَّةٍ مَعْرُوفَةٍ . سُوْرَانٌ فِي مَكْتَبَةٍ مَدْرَسَتِنَا مَعَ مَدْرَسَةٍ صَفْنَا .
هَذِهِ وَرَقَةٌ فَرِيدَةٌ وَتِلْكَ وَرَقَةٌ مُعَلِّمَتِهَا . مُعَلِّمَةٌ فَرِيدَةٌ عَرَبِيَّةٌ . سَيَّارَةٌ فَرِيدَةٌ جَدِيدَةٌ
وَجَمِيلَةٌ .

صَدِيقَتِي مُوَظَّفَةٌ فِي جَامِعَةِ يُوْطَا .

هِيَ وَزِيرَةٌ وَهُوَ زَعِيمٌ .

شَاكِرٌ ظَرِيفٌ وَفَرِيدَةٌ ظَرِيفَةٌ .

هَذِهِ مُسَاعِدَةٌ مُعَلِّمِي ، وَتِلْكَ مَنْدُوبَةٌ جَرِيدَةٍ مَشْهُورَةٍ .

كِتَابُهَا عَلَى طَاوِلَتِي .

هَذَا كِتَابِي وَذَلِكَ كِتَابُ صَدِيقِي .

(b) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily; except for not being fully vocalized, they are identical to what you read in exercise (a) above.

هَذِهِ مَمْلُكَةٌ مُلْكُهَا رَجُلٌ قَدِيرٌ وَحُكُومَتُهَا دِيمُقْرَاطِيَّةٌ .

خَرِيطَةُ مِصْرَ هُنَاكَ .

طَلَّابِي مِنْ مَدِينَةِ دِمَشْقَ عَاصِمَةِ سُوْرِيَا .

كِتَابِي عَلَى طَاوِلَةِ مُعَلِّمِي .

هذه ممرضةٌ سودانيةٌ وتلك طالبةٌ عراقيةٌ .

هذا ضابط كبير من قاعدة قريبة ، وهو رجل قدير .

ما رتبة صديقك عليّ ؟ هو عقيد .

قاهر تلميذ في مدرسة قريبة من هنا ، وفريدة تلميذة في مدرسة بعيدة من هنا .

سوزان مراسلةٌ جريدةٍ مصريةٍ معروفة . سوزان في مكتبة مدرستنا مع مدرّسة صفنا .

هذه ورقةٌ فريدةٌ وتلك ورقةٌ معلّمتها . معلّمةٌ فريدةٌ عربيةٌ . سيّارةٌ فريدةٌ جديدة

وجميلة .

صديقتي موظفة في جامعة يوتا .

هي وزيرة وهو زعيم .

شاكر ظريف وفريدة ظريفة .

هذه مساعدةٌ معلّمي ، وتلك مندوبةٌ جريدةٍ مشهورة .

كتابها على طاولتي .

هذا كتابي وذلك كتاب صديقي .

مَا رُتِبْتُ صَدِيقَكَ عَلَيَّ ؟ هُوَ عَقِيدٌ .

قَاهِرٌ تَلْمِيزٌ فِي مَدْرَسَةٍ قَرِيبَةٍ مِنْ هُنَا ، وَفَرِيدَةٌ تَلْمِيزَةٌ فِي مَدْرَسَةٍ بَعِيدَةٍ مِنْ هُنَا .
سُوزَانُ مُرَاسِلَةٌ جَرِيدَةٍ مِصْرِيَّةٍ مَعْرُوفَةٍ . سُوزَانُ فِي مَكْتَبَةِ مَدْرَسَتِنَا مَعَ مَدْرَسَةٍ صَفْنَا .
هَذِهِ وَرَقَةٌ فَرِيدَةٌ وَتِلْكَ وَرَقَةٌ مُعَلِّمَتِهَا . مُعَلِّمَةٌ فَرِيدَةٌ عَرَبِيَّةٌ . سَيَّارَةٌ فَرِيدَةٌ جَدِيدَةٌ
وَجَمِيلَةٌ .

صَدِيقَتِي مُوَظَّفَةٌ فِي جَامِعَةِ يُوسُفَا .

هِيَ وَزِيرَةٌ وَهُوَ زَعِيمٌ .

شَاكِرٌ ظَرِيفٌ وَفَرِيدَةٌ ظَرِيفَةٌ .

هَذِهِ مُسَاعِدَةٌ مُعَلِّمِي ، وَتِلْكَ مَنُذُوبَةٌ جَرِيدَةٍ مَشْهُورَةٍ .

كِتَابُهَا عَلَى طَاوِلَتِي .

هَذَا كِتَابِي وَذَلِكَ كِتَابُ صَدِيقِي .

(b) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily; except for not being fully vocalized, they are identical to what you read in exercise (a) above.

هَذِهِ مَمْلَكَةٌ مُلْكُهَا رَجُلٌ قَدِيرٌ وَحُكُومَتُهَا دِيمُقْرَاطِيَّةٌ .

خَرِيطَةُ مِصْرَ هُنَاكَ .

طُلَّابِي مِنْ مَدِينَةِ دِمَشْقَ عَاصِمَةِ سُورِيَا .

كِتَابِي عَلَى طَاوِلَةِ مُعَلِّمِي .

هذه ممرضةٌ سودانيةٌ وتلك طالبةٌ عراقيةٌ .

هذا ضابط كبير من قاعدة قريبة ، وهو رجل قدير .

ما رتبة صديقك عليّ ؟ هو عقيد .

قاهر تلميذ في مدرسةٍ قريبة من هنا ، وفريدة تلميذة في مدرسةٍ بعيدة من هنا .

سوزان مراسلةٌ جريدةٍ مصريةٍ معروفة . سوزان في مكتبة مدرستنا مع مدرّسة صفنا .

هذه ورقةٌ فريدةٌ وتلك ورقةٌ معلّمتها . معلّمةٌ فريدةٌ عربية . سيارةٌ فريدةٌ جديدة

وجميلة .

صديقتي موظفة في جامعة يوتا .

هي وزيرة وهو زعيم .

شاكر ظريف وفريدة ظريفة .

هذه مساعدةٌ معلّمي ، وتلك مندوبةٌ جريدةٍ مشهورة .

كتابها على طاولتي .

هذا كتابي وذلك كتاب صديقي .

(c) Learn to spell the items of exercise (b). Your teacher will select some of those items for dictation.

The "hamza" (for recognition)

(1) In English, the glottal stop sound occurs as the onset of utterance-initial vowels;* it also occurs word-medially in certain regional pronunciations of cotton, little, bottle, etc. Nevertheless, the English writing system has no symbol for the glottal stop. In the Roman transcription which this book uses, the glottal stop of Modern Standard Arabic is not represented when occurring at the beginning of an utterance because (in this position) it is predictable** and produced naturally by English speakers; in Arabic script, however, the symbol which stands for the glottal stop (and which is called the hamza) occurs utterance-initially as well as in other positions.

It is very easy to recognize the hamza, but it is rather difficult to learn certain aspects of writing it: the hamza is • ; but due to the manner in which the Arabic writing system evolved, and because the glottal stop was sometimes weakened or replaced by vowel length in the pronunciation of some ancient Arab tribes,** the hamza may (depending upon the environment) be written:

- (1) above waaw,
- (2) above yaa' (in which case the yaa' has no dots),
- (3) above alif,

*An utterance is a stretch of speech which is preceded by silence or a pause, and followed by silence or a pause.

**In Arabic, no syllable begins with a vowel; thus a transcribed Arabic utterance which begins with a vowel symbol is pronounced with an initial glottal stop.

***See the note which ends the section Writing the hamza.

- (4) below alif, or
 (5) independently.

When it occurs in conjunction with the symbol ء , a waaw, a yaa', or an alif is called a "chair"; for example, waaw is the chair in the combination وء . Recognizing the hamza is a simple matter because the symbol ء is always present no matter what chair occurs (if any).

Study the following examples which illustrate the various occurrences of the hamza:

أ إ و ء ء ء ء أ إ و ء ء ء ء

Circle each hamza in the following sequences:

ء ء ي ء و ء أ ك إ ر ن ي ك ء و ا إ ء ء

أ ك و ء ت إ ي أ ر و ء ء ك و ء ا ش و ك

Read the following exercises:

Exercise 1 (hamza in conjunction with alif)

أَمْ أَلْفٌ أَيْنَ أَنَا أَنْتَ أَنْتُمْ
 أَنْتَنَ أُسْتَاذٍ أَسَاتِدَةٍ أَخَذَ أَمَلٌ أَرْبَعَةَ
 سَأَلَ يَسْأَلُ فَاسٍ رَأَى شَأْنًا رَأَيْتُ فَأَرْ
 نَبَأٌ نَبَأٌ تَنْبَأُ جُرْأَةٌ تَجَرَّأَ مَلَأَ بَدَأَ
 بَدَأْتُ مَبْدَأُ أَكَلْتُ أَخَذْتُ نَأْخُذُ قَرَأْتُ تَأْلِيفٌ خَبَأْتُ كَأْسٌ عَبَأَ
 أَذِنَ أُذِنَ إِذَنْ أَمَرَ أَمَرَ أَمْرٌ أَنْسَ أَنْسَ أَنْسُ
 يَبْدَأُ يَبْدَأُ يَلْحَأُ يَلْحَأُ يَلْحَأُ يَلْحَأُ يَلْحَأُ يَلْحَأُ يَلْحَأُ يَلْحَأُ
 يَبْدَأُ يَبْدَأُ يَلْحَأُ يَلْحَأُ يَلْحَأُ يَلْحَأُ يَلْحَأُ يَلْحَأُ يَلْحَأُ

أَزَنْ = أَزَنْ = إِزَنْ = إِمْرٌ أَمْرٌ = إِمْرٌ = إِمْرٌ أُنْسٌ = إِنْسٌ = إِنْسٌ
 مَبْدَأٌ = مَبْدَأٌ = مَبْدَأٌ نَبَأٌ = نَبَأٌ = نَبَأٌ وَبَأٌ = وَبَأٌ = وَبَأٌ

Note

The above examples illustrate three important rules:

(1) Word-initial hamza is always written in conjunction with alif.

(2) When written above alif, the hamza may have a fatHa, a damma, a kasra, or a sukuun; when written underneath alif, it always has a kasra. Thus the kasra of a subscript hamza is redundant and is often dropped.

(3) With the combination أ , a kasra may occur (a) below the alif, or (b) below the hamza but above the alif.

Exercise 2 (hamza above waaw)

سُؤَالٌ فُؤُوسٍ رُؤُوسٍ رُؤُوسًا تَفَاؤُلٍ تَشَاؤُمٍ شُؤُونٌ مَسْؤُولًا
 مَسْؤُولِيَّةٌ فُؤَارٍ مُؤَلِّفٍ يُؤَلِّفُ يُؤَخِّذُ تُؤَكِّلُ بُؤُسٍ
 مَوْنٌ يُؤَدِّي نُؤَكِّدُ مُؤَتَمِرٍ مُؤَخَّرًا مُؤَجَّرٍ يُؤَثِّرُونَ
 مُؤَسِّفٌ تَوَمَّمُ نُؤَمِّنُ مُؤَخَّرَةً مُؤَامَرَةً مُؤَاخَذَةً لُؤْلُؤٌ

Exercise 3

رَعَّةٌ قَائِلًا رِئَاسَةً رَئِيسٌ قَائِدٌ إِسْرَائِيلُ كَائِنٌ نَائِمًا تَجَزَّئَةً
 جِئْتُمْ سَتَمَ مِئَةً بَثْرًا بَيْئَةً مُسَيِّئًا بَرِيئًا جَرِيئَةً بَيْئَسَ
 مَلِيٍّ يَكَاغِيَّ مُبْتَدِئٌ يُنْبِئُ بَارِئٌ يَبْتَدِئُ يُرْجِئُ مَلَاغِيَّ
 قَائِمًا تَبَرَّئَةً جِئْتُمَا بَثْرَانِ مُنْبِئٌ قَارِئٌ حِئْنَا جَرِيئًا مُبْتَدِئًا

قَائِلًا قَائِدٌ إِسْرَائِيلُ كَائِنٌ مُنْبِئٌ مُرْجِيٌّ بَارِيٌّ مُبْتَدِيٌّ قَارِيٌّ

When the hamza is written above yaa', a kasra may be written (a) underneath the chair or (b) underneath the hamza but above the chair. Both positions are illustrated in the foregoing exercise.

Exercise 4 (hamza written independently)

حَمْرَاءُ أَمْرَاءُ عُرَفَاءُ عُلَمَاءُ سَوْدَاءُ إِنَاءٌ لِقَاءٌ بَقَاءٌ رَاءٌ
 بَرِيٌّ بَذِيٌّ رَدِيٌّ هَنِيٌّ بَطِيٌّ مَلِيٌّ يُسِيٌّ يَقِيٌّ شَيٌّ
 قِرَاءَةٌ تَشَاءَمَ تَقَاَلَ إِسَاءَةٌ بَاءَتْ جَاءَتْ جَاءَ لَاَمٌ
 جَاءَ مَاءٌ بِنَاءٌ مَسَاءٌ سُوءٌ مَوُوءٌ يَجِيٌّ مُسِيٌّ جَرِيٌّ
 مَسَاءٌ مَسَاءٌ مَسَاءٌ نِسَاءٌ نِسَاءٌ نِسَاءٌ سَمَاءٌ سَمَاءٌ سَمَاءٌ
 عِبٌّ بَطٌّ بَدٌّ بَدَأَ جُزٌّ ضَوْءٌ مِلٌّ هَزٌّ جُزٌّ

Exercise 5 (hamza in different environments)

إِنَّ أَمَّا أَبَدًا أُمَّ أَنْ إِنَّهُ إِنَّمَا بُدِيَ لِيَعِيْمُ أَخَذَ
 إِذْرَاكَ جُزِّيَّ جَزَائِرُ مُبْتَدِيٌّ مُؤَلَّفَاتٍ تَسَاوُلَاتٍ تَضَاعَلُ يُرْجَى
 يَتَضَاعَلُ قِرَاءَاتٍ شَأْنٌ إِمَّا شُؤُونٌ مَسَاءٌ فَضَاءٌ إِلْفَاءٌ مَائِلٌ
 يَجِيٌّ جَاءَ مُقْرِيٌّ حِثُّ فَتَّةٌ بَرِيٌّ مُرْجِيٌّ أَفْتِدَةٌ فَإِنَّهُ
 يَفْتَأُ مُؤَجِّلٌ أَخِيرٌ مُؤَخَّرًا مُؤَامَرَةٌ مَسَائِيٌّ أَحْسَنُ حَسَنًا

بِئْرٍ مِّمَّاتٍ بِأَسٍّ إِنْتَاجٍ أُسْطُولٍ مَسَائِلٍ سُئِلَ تَنْبُؤُ يُنْبِئُ

بَلَاءٍ جَلَاءٍ يَسُوءُ وَضُوءٍ وَطَاءٍ عَبَّاءٍ وَطِيَاءٍ رَدِيَاءٍ بَذِيَاءٍ

(2) The ruq9a-style hamza is somewhat different from its nasx-style counterpart; the former is ۙ while the latter is ۞ . The symbol ۙ is, of course, written with a chair or independently, depending on the environment.

Trace the following examples, then copy them in the blank lines:

يَا أُمَّةُ إِنَّنِي أَنَا كُلُّ نَفْسٍ جَاءَتْ سَيِّئًا

نَبَأٌ مِّثْلَ مَاءٍ يُؤَمِّسُ يَأْمَسُ أَهْبَ أَصْدِقَاءُ أَجَلَسَ

أَدْخَلَ لَوْلُو يُؤَلِّفُونَ سَمِ رَأَى رَأَى فِدَائِي فَضَاءُ

The rules which specify the domain of independent hamza and the domain of each chair are rather complicated; discussion of those rules will therefore be postponed until the student has gained considerable practice in reading words where the hamza occurs. Eventually the student will conclude that certain environments require a certain chair, and his conclusion will be confirmed (or corrected) when the rules are presented.

The "madda"

Whenever أَ would otherwise occur, the symbol آ is used. The horizontal wavy stroke is called the madda, and the alif functions as the chair.

The symbol آ represents the sequence /'aa/: for example, the word /aakulu/ (/ 'aakulu/ if one represents the initial glottal stop in the Roman transcription) is written as أَكُلُ rather than أَأْكُلُ .

Read the following exercises:

Exercise 1

أَخَذَ أَخَذَ أَكَلَ أَدَبَ أَزَرَ أَزَرَ أَبِ أَبِ أَوَى أَوَى
أَخَذَ أَتِ أَجَالُ أَتَالُ أَنْ أَنَا أَسِفِ أَنَارُ أَجَلًا أَزَاهُ

Exercise 2

آلَةُ آلَاتِ أَزَابُ أَبَاهُ أَجَلًا تَأَخَّ أَتِ قَرَأَ
أَبْدَةُ أَنْ أَنْ أَسِفُ أَنَا أَخْطَا أَنَارًا بَدَأَ
الْبَهَةُ أَخَرُ أَخَرُ مَأْكِلُ أَكَلًا أَبَارُ أَفَاتِ أَفَّةُ مَلَا
تَأَمَّرَ أَمْرًا مُتَأَمِّرُونَ رَأَى رَأَى أَثَرُ أَمَلُ مَا زِنْ تَوَاطَا
أَخَذَ أَخَذَا أَمِنْ أَجَلُ أَبْطَأَ أَلَامُ أَلِيَّ أُنَبَا

^٢أَ آ أَخَذُ أَخَذُ أَكَلُ أَكَلُ أَكَلُ أَكَلُ أَكَلُ أَكَلُ أَكَلُ

تَمَرُّ بِدَا أَذَانِ رَأَهُ مِرَاةٌ أَبَارُ أَنْطَا آخَرِينَ

رَأَى آتٍ لِّلَّيْلِ أَكَلَرَ مَا ذِئْقَرَا قَرَا أُنْجَبَا

Write out the following words in Arabic script:
/aaxidan/, /aakilun/, /mir'aatin/, /aasifin/, /aadaaban/,
/ra'aanii/, /aabaa'un/, and /aajilan/.

Review

(a) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily.

أَمْ أُسْتَاذٌ أَنَا أَنْتَ أَيْنَ رَئِيسٍ قَائِدٌ أُسْتَاذَةٌ أَيُّضًا غَائِبٌ أَنْتُمْ أَنْتَنَ
طَائِرَةٌ أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا رَئِيسَاتٌ طَائِرَاتٍ أُسْتَاذَاتٌ هَؤُلَاءِ أَسَاتِذَةُ إِسْرَائِيلَ
صُنْعَاءُ أَوْلَايِكَ آدَمُ أَمْرِيكِيُّونَ أَمْرِيكِيَّاتٌ إِدَاعَةٌ أَقْلَامٌ أُرْدُنِيُّونَ أُرْدُنِيَّاتٌ
قُدَمَا قَدِيمَاتٌ رُؤَسَاءُ عُرَفَاءُ أَبْعَدُ أَجَدُ أَجْمَلُ أَشْهَرُ أَصْغَرُ أَطْوَلُ
أَظْرَفُ أَقْدَرُ أَقْدَمُ أَقْرَبُ أَقْصَرُ أَكْبَرُ أَكْثَرُ أَوْبًا جِدًّا جُنُودٌ جُيُوشٌ
أَمَالُ آلَامٍ لُغَةٌ لُغَاتٌ

(b) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily; except for not being fully vocalized, they are identical to what you read in exercise (a) above.

أَمْ أَسْتَاذٌ أَنَا أَنْتَ أَيْنَ رَئِيسٍ قَائِدٌ أَسْتَاذَةٌ أَيْضًا غَائِبٌ أَنْتُمْ أَنْتَنَ
طَائِرَةٌ أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا رَئِيسَاتٌ طَائِرَاتٌ أَسْتَاذَاتٌ هَؤُلَاءِ أَسَاتِذَةُ إِسْرَائِيلِ
صَنَعَاءُ أَوْلَاكَ آدَمُ أَمْرِيكِيَّوْنَ أَمْرِيكِيَّاتٌ إِذَاعَةٌ أَقْلَامٌ أَرْدَنِيَّوْنَ أَرْدَنِيَّاتٌ
قَدَمَاءُ قَدِيمَاتٌ رُؤَسَاءُ عَرَفَاءُ أَبْعَدُ أَجْدُ أَجْمَلُ أَشْهَرُ أَصْغَرُ أَطْوَلُ
أَظْرَفُ أَقْدَرُ أَقْدَمُ أَقْرَبُ أَقْصَرُ أَكْبَرُ أَكْثَرُ أَوْثَرًا جَدًّا جَنُودٌ جِيُوشِ
أَمَالُ أَلَامُ لَفَةٌ لِفَاتِ

(c) Learn to spell the items of exercise (b). Your teacher will select some of those items for dictation.

The numerals

(1) The printed forms of 0 - 9 are given below (from right to left):

٩ ٨ ٧ ٦ ٥ ٤ ٣ ٢ ١ ٠

The pronunciation and the grammatical usage of Arabic numerals are rather complicated; in this book, only the graphical representation can be dealt with.

Identify each of the following numerals by giving

the English equivalent:

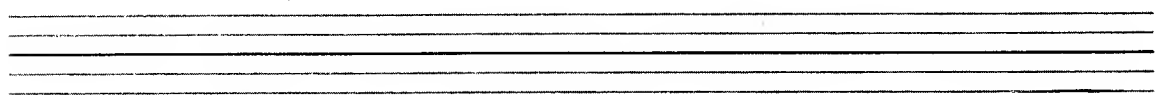
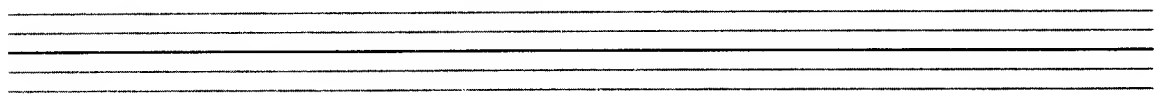
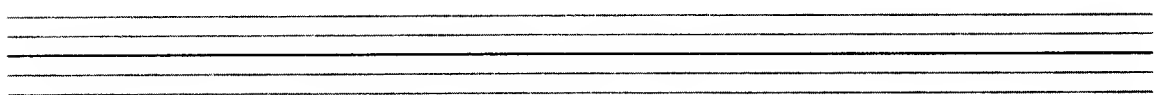
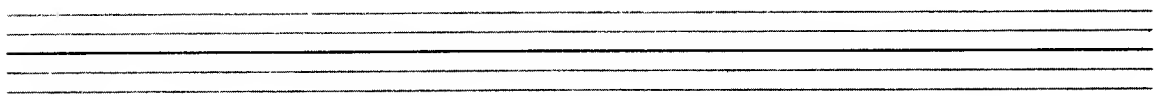
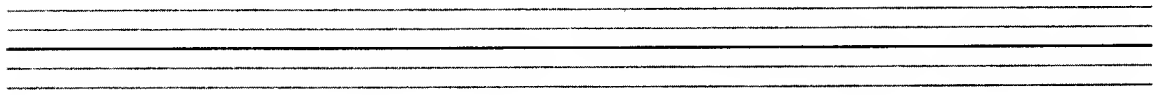
٧ ٨ ١٠ ٢ ٥ ٣ ٤ ٣ ٢ ٩ ٦ ٩ ٣ ٧ ٨ ٤ ٥
٥ ٩ ٢ ١٠ ٥ ٨ ٤ ٧ ٦ ٣ ٩ ٢ ٣ ١ ٦ ٩ ٦

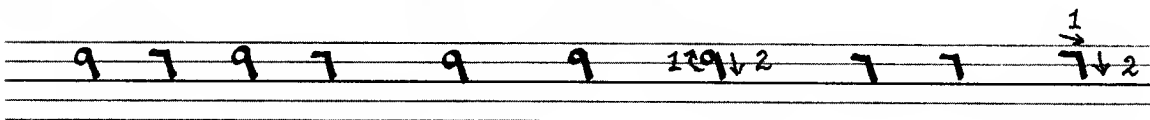
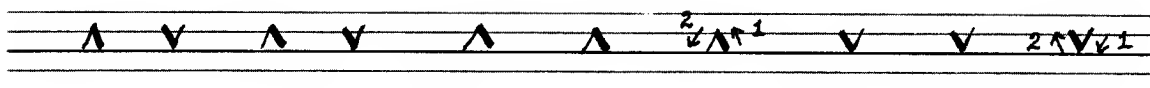
The digits of a written Arabic number and those of the corresponding English number occur in precisely the same arrangement; for example, in both the Arabic number ٥٣١ and the English equivalent 531, the symbol for 'five' is on the left, the symbol for 'one' is on the right, and the symbol for 'three' is in the middle.

Give the English equivalents for the following numbers:

٢٥ ٦٢ ١٣ ٢٨ ١٦ ١٠ ٩٧ ٩٠ ٨٠ ٤٥ ٣٦ ٢٨
٥٢٣ ٧٤٢ ٥٠٧ ٩٦٣ ١٣٨ ١٩٧ ٩٧٨ ٥٤٢ ٦٣٨
٤,٥٩٣ ٩,٨٧٠ ٤,٣٢١ ١,٣٥٠ ٦,٨٢٣ ٩٣٠ ١٣٩ ١٧٠
٢٩,٩١١ ١٠,٠٥٤ ٢٥,٥٥٥ ٢,١١١ ٨,٨٨٧ ٩,٩٩٩ ٩,١٠٢
٤٥٠,٧٩١ ٩٧,٠٥٤ ٤٢,٦٣٨ ١٠,٠٠٥ ١٤,٩٩٩ ٣٢,٨٩٦
٥,٧٠٨,٣٦٢ ٤,٠٥٩,٥٧٠ ١,٨٦٢,٥٤٢ ٦٣٨,٣٦٢
٦,٧٤٨,٩٠٠,١١١

(2) The handwritten forms of the Arabic numerals 'two' and 'three' are different from the corresponding printed forms; for the rest of the numerals, the handwritten forms and their printed counterparts are quite similar. Trace the following numerals then copy them in the blank





In writing a group of two digits, Arabs start from the right unless the digit on the right is zero. In writing a group of three digits, Arabs proceed as follows:

- (a) The digit for the hundreds is written first.
- (b) The other two digits are written from right to left if they constitute one of the numerals 21 - 99; otherwise they are written from left to right. In this context, it is significant that the numerals 21 - 99 are pronounced in the fashion "one and twenty", "five and

sixty", etc.

Study the following examples, then copy them in the blank lines:

19 1A 1V 17 10 12 1K 15 11^{ba}

9. 1. 5. 7. 0. 2. 4. 6. 1.^{ab}

CKC KCK CKC KKK CCC KKK CCC^{acb}

91A 27. 915 717 9K. 21. 210^{abc}

A long number consists of groups (separated by commas). The groups are written consecutively, beginning with the highest. The digits constituting a group are written in the order specified above. Study the examples below:

b a c e d	a b c e d	a b d c e g f h i j
52,780	70,985	1,850,797,22.

b a c e d f g h	a b c d e f g	a b c d f e g h i j k l
57,859,11.	1,817,11.	710,229,87.,117

For all practical purposes, it is immaterial whether the learner writes the digits of a given number in the order described above or in some other order, so long as each digit is placed in the correct slot.

Copy the following numbers in the blank lines:

819,800,717,22. 02,880 9,180 27,809,11.

Write out the following numbers in Arabic:


1,590,750	382,112	6,150,048	273,949
6,386,027	918,446,516	10,542,170	18,142,229
98,071,333			

The "waṣla"

(1) In regard to their pronunciation, some Arabic words begin with a consonant cluster when they follow another form in the same utterance;* when one of those words introduces the utterance, a prefix (consisting of a glottal stop and a following short vowel) occurs before the two consonants.** Such words are therefore utterance-conditioned.

In the first of the two environments specified above, utterance-conditioned words are pronounced in close association (liaison) with the preceding form; the environment in question will therefore be called the "liaison position". Compare the underlined forms in the following two utterances:

/haada <u>lmuraasilu</u> /	'this correspondent'
/almuraasilu hunaa./	'The correspondent is here.'

The symbol  indicates liaison; it is called waṣla or hamzat waṣl 'connective hamza' (in opposition to the symbol • which is called hamzat qatʿ 'disjunctive hamza'), and seems to be an abbreviation of the ṣaad in وَصْلَة.*** According to the rules of Arabic spelling,

*An utterance is a stretch of speech which is preceded by silence or a pause and followed by silence or a pause.

**Addition of the prefix prevents the unpermitted occurrence of consonant clusters in utterance-initial position. The short vowel of the prefix is /a/ in some words, /u/ in others, and /i/ in the rest.

***In this book, the unqualified term "hamza" always refers to the symbol •.

an utterance-conditioned word which occurs in the liaison position should be written with an initial hamzat waṣl; one which introduces the utterance should be written with an initial hamzat qaṭʿ. In the written forms of utterance-conditioned words, each of the initial symbols ~ and ء is combined with an alif; such forms should therefore begin with آ , أ , إ , or إِ :

هَذَا الْكِتَابُ جَدِيدٌ . 'This book is new.'

الْكِتَابُ هُنَا . 'The book is here.'

قُلْتُ أَكْتُبْ مَقَالًا . 'I said: Write an article!'

أَكْتُبْ مَقَالًا . 'Write an article!'

مَا اسْمُهُ ؟ 'What is his name?'

إِسْمُهُ سَلِيمٌ . 'His name is Salim.'

Although correct, the use of initial أ , initial إ , and initial إِ in writing utterance-conditioned words is not popular; the more common practice is to omit the symbol ء and to retain the accompanying sakl:

الْكِتَابُ هُنَا . 'The book is here.'

أَكْتُبْ مَقَالًا . 'Write an article!'

إِسْمُهُ سَلِيمٌ . 'His name is Salim.'

In unvocalized and partly-vocalized texts, all utterance-conditioned words (no matter where they occur) are usually written with an initial alif which has neither a hamzat qaṭʿ nor a sakl. Study the examples which are given

below:

هذا الكتاب جديدٌ . 'This book is new.'

الكتاب هنا . 'The book is here.'

قلتُ اكتبْ مقالاً . 'I said: Write an article!'

اكتبْ مقالاً . 'Write an article!'

ما اسمه ؟ 'What is his name?'

اسمه سليمٌ . 'His name is Salim.'

Read the following exercises:

Exercise 1

هذا <u>القلم</u> طويلٌ — <u>القلم</u> طويلٌ	صديقِي في <u>البيت</u> — <u>البيت</u> جديدٌ
في <u>المدرسة</u> — <u>المدرسة</u> صغيرةٌ	قلتُ <u>اكتبْ</u> مقالاً — <u>اكتبْ</u> مقالاً
هذه <u>البنْتُ</u> جميلةٌ — <u>البنْتُ</u> جميلةٌ	تلك <u>المدينة</u> بعيدةٌ — <u>المدينة</u> بعيدةٌ
ما <u>اسمها</u> ؟ — <u>اسمها</u> فريدةٌ	ما <u>اسمها</u> ؟ — <u>اسمها</u> عليٌّ

Exercise 2

صديقي في البيت - البيتُ جديدٌ	هذا القلمُ طويلٌ - القلمُ طويلٌ
أين المكتبُ؟ - المكتبُ هناك	مكتبُ العقيدِ - العقيدُ مشهورٌ
تلك المدينةُ بعيدةٌ - المدينةُ بعيدةٌ	هذه البنتُ جميلةٌ - البنتُ جميلةٌ
دفعتر الأستاذُ - الأستاذُ قديرٌ	على الكرسيِّ - الكرسيُّ جديدٌ
ما اسمُها؟ - اسمُها سميرةٌ	ما اسمُها؟ - اسمُها عليٌّ

2 (a). Listed below are the common utterance-conditioned words of Modern Standard Arabic:

(i) Words beginning with the definite article:
e.g., **الْمُرَاسِلُ هُنَا** 'the correspondent's car', **سَيَّارَةُ الْمُرَاسِلِ**
'The correspondent is here.'

(ii) Imperative sound verbs of Measure I:
e.g., **اُكْتُبْ رِسَالَةً** 'Write a letter!'; **اِذْهَبْ مَعَهُ** 'Go with him!';
قُلْتُ أَكْتُبْ 'I said, Write!'; **قُلْتُ اذْهَبْ** 'I said, Go!';

(iii) Past-tense forms, imperative forms, and verbal nouns of Measures VII - X: e.g., **صَدِيقِي اسْتَمَعَ لَهُ** 'My friend listened to him';
اسْتَمَعَ صَدِيقِي لَهُ 'My friend listened to him'; **يَا صَدِيقِي اسْتَمِعْ** 'My friend, listen!';
اسْتَمِعْ يَا صَدِيقِي 'Listen, my friend!'; **سَرَّنِي اسْتِمَاعُكَ لَهُ** 'It pleased me that you listened to him';
اسْتِمَاعُكَ لَهُ سَرَّنِي 'It pleased me that you listened to him.' (on the other hand, the past-tense forms, imperative forms, and verbal nouns of Measure IV are written with a hamzat qat9).

Notice that, in utterance-initial position, words of the first type are written with $\acute{\text{I}}$ as the first symbol, those of the second type are written with $\acute{\text{I}}$ (if the stem vowel is /u/) or ! (if the stem vowel is not /u/), and the rest are written with ! .

The definite article is usually written with an initial alif; however, that alif is dropped after the prepositional particle ج; it is also dropped after the particle ف and the interrogative particle هـ (both of which rarely occur before the definite article in Modern Standard Arabic).^{*} After other particles, the alif is retained:

(b). The waṣla in ruq9a script resembles its counterpart in nasx printing. After writing the alif, one writes above it a small loop similar to that of ṣaad, then continues to the left with a short, wavy tail. Study and trace the examples below:

*A sequence consisting of the interrogative أ and the alif of the definite article is replaced by آ; thus أَ الْكِتَابُ → آلْكِتَابُ

Copy the following sequences in the blank lines:

مَعَ الْوَزِيرِ إِلَى الْعِرَاقِ تَحْتَ الْأَرْضِ بِالْيَمِينِ

فِي الْعَرَبِيَّةِ عَنِ الْبُلْدَانِ الْغَرَبِيَّةِ مَا اسْمُكَ وَكَتَبُ

كِتَابُ ابْنِي فَأَجْعَلْنَا مَعَ الْمُمِيرِ وَاللَّانِ أَذْهَبُ

Writing exercises

(1) Write out the following sentences in Arabic script; each sentence begins with an utterance-conditioned word:
/alkitaabu hunaa/, /almuraasilu hunaaka/, /uxruj min hunaa/,
/isma9 liqawlil/, /albaytu ba9iidun/, /inṣarafa ba9da
saa9atin/, /ibnuka hunaa/, /al9amalu kaṯiirun/, /ismuhu

fariidun/.

(2) Write out the following expressions in Arabic script. Each expression contains one of the utterance-conditioned words used in exercise (1): /kataba lkitaaba/, /qaabaltu lmuraasila/, /qultu xruj/, /fasma9/, /lilbayti/, /fantaqala/, /libnika/, /bil9amali/, /hali smuhu bašiirun?/.

"Sun letters"

Prescriptive rules of spelling stipulate that, after the graphical sequence ال which represents the definite article, a sadda must occur above the letters ت , ث , د , ل , ظ , ط , ض , ص , ش , س , ز , ر , ن (called "sun letters" because شَمْس 'sun' begins with one of them*). The sadda indicates that, in pronunciation, the consonant represented by the laam is assimilated to the following consonant. Two examples are given below:

الشَّمْس	(/aʃʃamsu/)	'the sun'
الطَّالِب	(/aṭṭaalibu/)	'the student'

Notice that when followed by a "sun letter", the laam of ال is written with no accompanying diacritical marks.

Except for ش , the "sun letters" listed above represent dental consonants; thus in most cases it is to a dental consonant that the dental /l/ is assimilated. In some pronunciations (e.g., that of Egyptians), ك and ج are optionally included in the "sun letters".

In most handwritten and printed texts, the short vowel symbols, the sukuun, the initial hamza, the dagger alif, and the sadda are omitted although some Arabists insist that the hamza and the sadda must be dropped under no circumstances. Even when supplied elsewhere in partly-vocalized and totally unvocalized texts, the sadda is often missing above the "sun letters" after ال .

Read the following words and phrases:

*The contrasting group are called "moon letters" because قَمَر 'moon' begins with one of them; to this group belong all consonant symbols other than the "sun letters".

"Sun letters"

Prescriptive rules of spelling stipulate that, after the graphical sequence ال which represents the definite article, a sadda must occur above the letters ت , ث , د , ل , ظ , ط , ض , ص , ش , س , ز , ر , ن (called "sun letters" because شَمْس 'sun' begins with one of them*). The sadda indicates that, in pronunciation, the consonant represented by the laam is assimilated to the following consonant. Two examples are given below:

الشَّمْسُ	(/aʃʃamsu/)	'the sun'
الطَّالِبُ	(/aṭṭaalibu/)	'the student'

Notice that when followed by a "sun letter", the laam of ال is written with no accompanying diacritical marks.

Except for ش , the "sun letters" listed above represent dental consonants; thus in most cases it is to a dental consonant that the dental /l/ is assimilated. In some pronunciations (e.g., that of Egyptians), ك and ج are optionally included in the "sun letters".

In most handwritten and printed texts, the short vowel symbols, the sukuun, the initial hamza, the dagger alif, and the sadda are omitted although some Arabists insist that the hamza and the sadda must be dropped under no circumstances. Even when supplied elsewhere in partly-vocalized and totally unvocalized texts, the sadda is often missing above the "sun letters" after ال .

Read the following words and phrases:

*The contrasting group are called "moon letters" because قَمَر 'moon' begins with one of them; to this group belong all consonant symbols other than the "sun letters".

الشَّمْسُ اللُّغَةُ عَلَى النَّهْرِ مِنَ الطَّالِبِ
التَّلْمِيزُ الرَّجُلُ وَالْمَرْأَةُ النُّورُ وَالظَّلَامُ فِي الدَّرْسِ

الْقَهْوَةُ وَالشَّايُ الشَّمْسُ وَالْقَمَرُ أَحَبُّ التَّدْرِيسِ
القهوة والشاي الشمس والقمر أحب التدريس

بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ الصَّدِيقُ الْمُخْلِصُ النِّسَاءُ الثَّلَاثُ
بعد الظهر الصديق المخلص النساء الثلاث

(2) Dictation

Your teacher will dictate the following sentences to you:

الْكِتَابُ مَعَ الصَّدِيقِ الْأَمْرِيكِيِّ .
الدَّفْتَرُ مَعَ التَّلْمِيزِ .
الْجُنْدِيُّ مَعَ الْأُسْتَاذِ .
هَذَا الشُّبَّاکُ کَبِيرٌ .
الطَّالِبُ مَعَ الصَّاحِبِ .
السَّبُورَةُ قَرِيبَةٌ مِنَ الْبَابِ .
هَذَا الرَّجُلُ عَرَبِيٌّ .
الطَّالِبَةُ الطَّرِيفَةُ مِنَ الْعِرَاقِ .
مِنَ التَّلْمِيزِ الثَّانِي ؟
اللُّغَةُ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ لُغَةُ الْأُرْدُنِّ .

Review

(a) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily.

صَبَاحَ الْخَيْرِ . صَبَاحَ الثُّورِ .

مَسَاءَ الْخَيْرِ . مَسَاءَ الثُّورِ .

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ . وَعَلَيْكُمْ السَّلَامُ .

مَعَ السَّلَامَةِ .

هَلِ الْيَمَنُ بَعِيدَةٌ مِنَ الْأُرْدُنِّ ؟ مَا لُغَةُ الْيَمَنِ ؟

الْعِرَاقُ جُمْهُورِيَّةٌ دِيمُقْرَاطِيَّةٌ ، وَأَمْرِيكَ أَيْضًا جُمْهُورِيَّةٌ دِيمُقْرَاطِيَّةٌ .

السُّودَانُ قَرِيبٌ مِنْ جُمْهُورِيَّةِ مِصْرَ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ .

جَرِيدَةُ الْأَهْرَامِ مَعْرُوفَةٌ فِي أَمْرِيكَ ، وَجَرِيدَةُ الْوَاشِنْطُنْ بُوسْتِ مَعْرُوفَةٌ فِي مِصْرَ .

جَرِيدَةُ الْحَيَاةِ لُبْنَانِيَّةٌ وَجَرِيدَةُ الْوَاشِنْطُنْ بُوسْتِ أَمْرِيكِيَّةٌ .

الْقَاهِرَةُ عَاصِمَةُ مِصْرَ ، وَهِيَ مَقَرُّ الْحُكُومَةِ .

مَا اسْمُكَ ؟ وَمَا اسْمُ صَدِيقِكَ الظَّرِيفِ .

أَيْنَ الطَّالِبُ التُّرْكِيُّ ؟ وَأَيْنَ الرَّجُلُ الْعِرَاقِيُّ ؟ وَالضَّابِطُ الْمِصْرِيُّ ؟ وَالْعُرَاسِلُ
اللِّيبِيُّ ؟

أَيْنَ الدَّفْتَرُ ؟ هَلْ هُوَ قَرِيبٌ مِنَ الشُّبَّاکِ ؟

هَلْ أُسْتَاذُكَ هُنَا الْيَوْمَ ؟ أَيْنَ أُسْتَاذُكَ الْآنَ ؟

هَلْ رَئِيسُ الْوُزَرَاءِ رَجُلٌ قَدِيرٌ ؟

(b) Practise reading the following items until you can recognize them easily; except for not being fully vocalized, they are identical to what you read in exercise (a).

صباح الخير.	صباح النور.
مساء الخير.	مساء النور.
السلام عليكم.	وعليكم السلام.
مع السلامة.	

هل اليمن بعيدة من الأردن ؟ ما لغة اليمن ؟
العراق جمهورية ديمقراطية ، وأمريكا أيضاً جمهورية ديمقراطية .
السودان قريب من جمهورية مصر العربية .
جريدة الأهرام معروفة في أمريكا ، وجريدة الواشنطن بوست معروفة في مصر .
جريدة الحياة لبنانية وجريدة الواشنطن بوست أمريكية .
القاهرة عاصمة مصر ، وهي مقر الحكومة .

ما اسمك ؟ وما اسم صديقك الظريف ؟
أين الطالب التركي ؟ وأين الرجل العراقي ؟ والضابط المصري ؟ والمراسل
الليبي ؟

أين الدفتر ؟ هل هو قريب من الشباك ؟
هل أستاذك هنا اليوم ؟ أين أستاذك الآن ؟
هل رئيس الوزراء رجل قدير ؟

(c) Learn to spell the items of exercise (b). Your teacher will select some of those items for dictation.

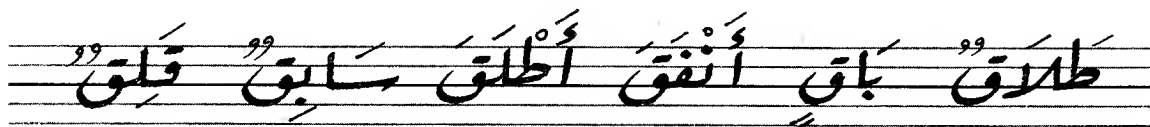
Alternate forms for certain letters

You are now familiar with all the letters of the Arabic alphabet; however, some Arabic letters have alternate shapes which you must learn to recognize and some of which you must learn to write. The alternate forms which will be discussed here are found only in the ruq9a style.

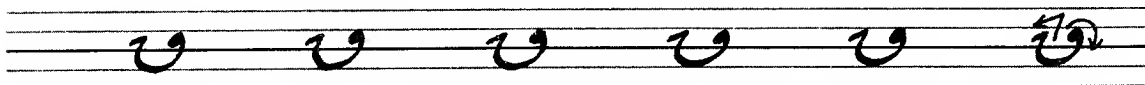
There are four alternate forms each of which ends in a short tail; that tail corresponds to the dot (or dots) of the nasx counterpart. The forms in question are discussed below.

The flourished "qaaf"

The flourished form of qaaf which you have already learned to write is illustrated below:



The more common way of writing flourished qaaf is to end the semicircular stroke with a short slanting tail which is written from right to left above the middle line; no suprascript stroke is written as part of the letter. Study and trace the examples below:



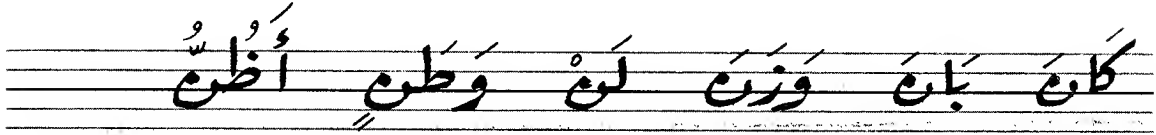
Copy the following words in the blank lines:

سَاوُ بَاوِ إِطْرُو قَلُوْ سَابِي أَنْفُو

Write out the following words in Arabic script, using the alternate form of flourished qaaf: /faaruuqun/, /saaqun/, /abraqa/, /tamziiqun/, /baqqin/, /yusbaqu/, /suriqa/, /nassaqa/, /\$aaqqin/, /ibqa/, and /yaliiqu/.

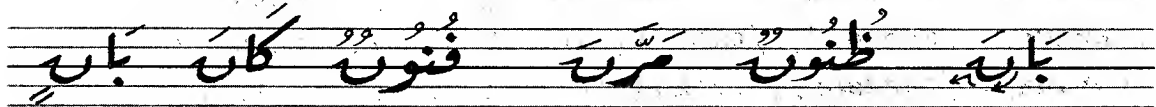
The flourished "nuun"

The form of flourished nuun which you have already learned to write is illustrated below:

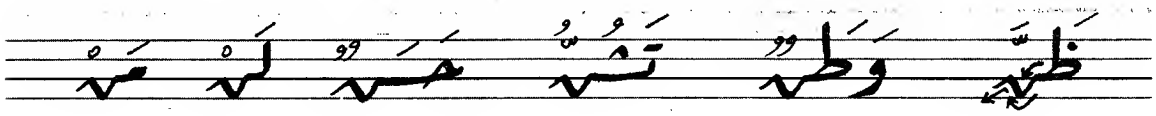


The more common way of writing flourished nuun may be described as follows:

(1) The downward stroke of independent nuun is begun slightly above the middle line, but instead of making a semi-circle and adding a dot above it, one makes a shape which is round on the right side but angular on the left, and then ends the letter with a tail similar to that of flourished qaaf; no suprascript dot is written. Study and trace the examples below:



(2) Final nuun begins with a descent from the joining line. The letter in this position is V-shaped but ends with the characteristic slanting tail. Study and trace the following examples:



Copy the following words in the blank lines:

وَنُورُ إِيْرَانُ بُنَانُ الصَّيْفِ الْيَمَّةُ لَكَّ

Write out the following words in Arabic script, using the alternate forms of flourished nuun: /al-yaabaanu/, /afgaanistaanu/, /al-yuunaanu/, /batnin/, /ḍanna/, /diinun/, /adaana/, /almuduna/, /jayṣaani/, /yaliinu/, /muṣaskarayni/, and /lijaanun/.

Dictation

Write the following words as they are dictated to you, using the alternate forms of flourished qaaf and flourished

nuun:

لَنْ سَبَقَ قَارَنَ فَنَّ سَبَقَ لَاقٍ
مِنْ مَنْ سَاقٍ فَرَّقُ وَطَنٍ بَانَ شَقَّ

The flourished "daad"

The flourished form of daad which you have learned to write is illustrated below:

قَاضٍ فَرَضٌ قَرَضٌ نَبَضٌ يَبِغُضُ مَرِيضٌ

The more common way of writing flourished daad is to replace the semi-circle by a stroke which is identical to the alternate form of final nuun, but which begins with an ascent. This form of daad has no dot above the loop. Study and trace the examples below:

قَاضٍ فَرَضٌ قَرَضٌ نَبَضٌ يَبِغُضُ مَرِيضٌ

قَاضٍ فَرَضٌ قَرَضٌ نَبَضٌ يَبِغُضُ مَرِيضٌ

Copy the following words in the blank lines:

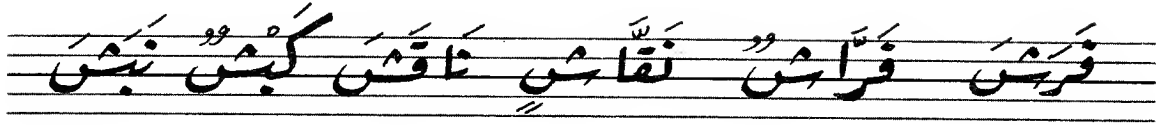
عَوَّصَ رَاحِي أَفْرَاحِي رَفَعَهُ يَفْتَرِصُ بَعَثَ

Write out the following words in Arabic script, using the alternate form of flourished daad: /riyaaḍun/, /bayḍin/, /qaaḍin/, /mariidun/, /infadḍa/, /furuuḍun/, /quruuḍin/, and /tamriidun/.

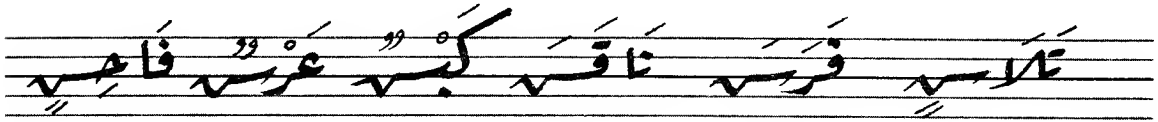
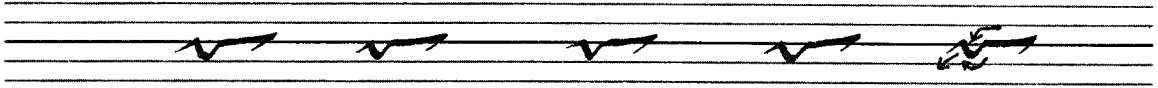
The flourished "ṣiin"

The flourished form of ṣiin which you have learned to

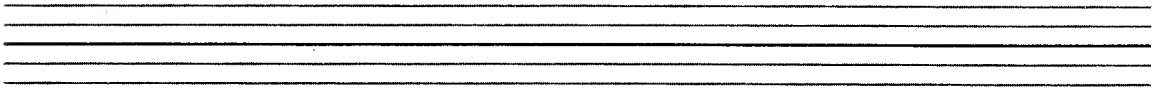
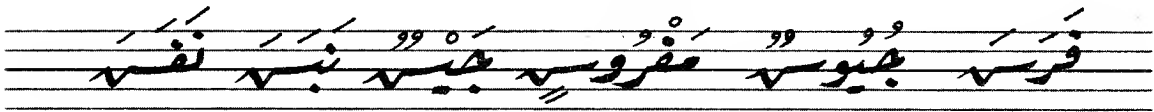
write is illustrated below:



The more common way of writing flourished siin is to replace the semicircle of the basic shape by a stroke identical to the alternate form of final nuun and to omit the suprascript stroke. Study and trace the examples below:



Copy the following words in the blank lines:



Write out the following words in Arabic script, using the alternate form of flourished siin: /ja'sin/, /aljaysu/, /qašsin/, /maasin/, /niqaasun/, /fiṛaašin/, /Hašiišin/, /Haššaašun/, /kabšin/, and /ṛaššaašin/.

Dictation

Write the following words as they are dictated to you, using the alternate forms of flourished qaad and flourished siin:

قَاضٍ قَاشٍ نَقَضَ نَبَشَ رَفَضَ نَقَاشٌ
كَبَشٌ مَرِيضٌ تَلَاشٍ جَيْشٌ مَرَضٌ اَلْبَعْضُ

The alternate forms of ”

The suffix /-un/ which occurs on nunated nominative forms can be written in one of three ways: the first way, which you have already learned, is to place two damma's above the last consonant symbol of the word. The following are examples:

بَيْتٌ فَنَجَانٌ كُتِبَ طَابٌ مُعَكَّرٌ ضَابٌ قَلَمٌ

The second way is to write a damma then surround its head with a halo (written upwards):

بَيْتٌ فَنَجَانٌ مُعَكَّرٌ ضَايِبٌ قَلَمٌ ^{٢١٩}

The third (and most common) way is to write a damma and add to the bottom of its tail a small semicircle similar to the suprascript stroke of the ruq9a-style 9aa'. The symbol is one continuous stroke. Study and trace the examples below.

بَيْتٌ شَجَرَةٌ حَجْرٌ جُنْدِيٌّ طَالِبٌ ^{٢٢٠}

Copy the following words in the blank lines:

بَيْتٌ فَنَجَانٌ كُتِبَ طَالِبٌ مُعَكَّرٌ ضَايِبٌ قَلَمٌ

Write out the following words in Arabic script, using the alternate form ھ : /Harfun/, /salaamun/, /qahwatun/, /kitaabun/, /darsun/, /yadun/, /raṣiifun/, /maw9idun/, /juyuusun/, /arḍun/, /sayyaaratun/, and /ṣaḥnun/.

Review

(a) Study the following sentences until you can read them fluently.

١- جَامِعَةُ سِتَانفُورْدِ كَبِيرَةٌ وَالْأَسَانِدَةُ الَّتِي فِيهَا
قَدِيرُونَ . مِمَّنِ الْأُسْتَاذَاتِ اللَّوَاتِي فِي تِلْكَ الْجَامِعَةِ
أُسْتَاذَةٌ مَشْهُورَةٌ مِنْ أَوْرَبَا اسْمُهَا جَيْدِ بَرَاوِس .
٢- جَيْدِ مَضْرُوبٌ كَبِيرٌ وَقَائِدُهُ مُشِيرٌ مَعْرُوفٌ .
٣- فِي مَكْتَبِ الْأُسْتَاذِ مُمَرِّصَةٌ وَمُمَرِّضَةٌ . الْمُمَرِّصَةُ
عِرَاقِيٌّ وَالْمُمَرِّضَةُ مِصْرِيَّةٌ .

(b) Practise writing the above sentences. Your teacher will dictate them to you in whatever order he chooses.

Additional alternate forms for recognition

In ruq9a script there are some fairly common forms which you must learn to recognize but which you need not learn to write. Those forms are discussed below.

Alternate forms of final "haa'" and final "taa' marbuuṭa'

Final haa' and final taa' marbuuṭa' have the forms

ا and آ respectively, as in the following examples:

قَامَهُ بَيْتُهُ لُغَتُهُ طَلَّابُهُ مَدْرَسَةُ اللُّغَةِ سَنَةً

The stroke ا is often replaced by a downward stroke which starts from a point on the middle line. Accordingly, the above words would be written as follows:

قَامَهُ بَيْتُهُ لُغَتُهُ طَلَّابُهُ مَدْرَسَةُ اللُّغَةِ سَنَةً

Read the following words aloud.

بَابُهُ رَجُلُهُ عَطَلَهُ حُكُومَةُ اللُّغَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ

رَأْسُهُ سَيَّارَتُهُ مَدْرَسَتُهُ بَطَّةٌ سَاعَةٌ

بَحِيثُهُ خِلَافَتُهُ مُخْلِصَتُهُ دِرَاسَتُهُ دَقِيقَةٌ

Alternate forms of the combination "alif-laam"

The two letters which stand for the definite article are normally written as **ال** . The following are examples:

اَلْكَتُبُ اَلرَّجُلُ اَلْأَكْلُ اَلْمَاءُ اَصْبَاحُ
اَلْبَيْتُ اَلْقَهْوَةُ اَلْعَارِقَةُ اَلرَّفْضُ اَلْوَرَقُ اَلنَّقْشُ

Sometimes, however, Arabs write the alif below the middle line and underneath the laam. Accordingly, the foregoing words would be written as follows (the short vowel symbols are omitted):

اكتب الرجل اكل ماء اصباح
بيت قهوة عارقة رفض ورق نقش

A less common way of writing the definite article is to join the two letters at the top. Study the following examples (short vowels are not represented):

اكتب الرجل اكل ماء اصباح
البيت القهوة العارقة الرقص الورق النقش

Alternate form of "kaaf-alif"

The standard form of kaaf-alif is that which occurs in the following examples:

كَانَ كَارِثَةً كَافِرٌ كَأْسٌ كَافٍ كَامِلٌ مَكَانٍ كَادَ

Another form of the same combination is illustrated below (short vowels are not represented):

كان كارية كافر كأس كاف كامل مكان كاد

Alternate forms for combinations consisting of (1) a "raa' ", "zaay", "daal", or "daal" and (2) a following "haa' " or "taa' marbuuṭa"

The examples below show the standard form of haa' and taa' marbuuṭa after raa', zaay, daal, and daal:

سَرَّ عُمَرُ سَتَرَ سَجَرُ جَدُّ حَدَّ بَنَدُ حَذَّ
الْقَاهِرَةُ النَّاصِرَةُ هَزَّ عَزِيْزَةُ مَدَّ الْوَلَدَةُ فَدَّ لَدَّ

Many Arabs, especially when writing fast, join raa', zaay, daal, and daal to a following haa' or taa' marbuuṭa. Some Arabs omit taa' marbuuṭa's suprascript stroke, a practice which is considered erroneous. The following are examples (short vowels are not represented):

سَرَّ عُمَرُ سَتَرَ سَجَرُ جَدُّ حَدَّ بَنَدُ حَذَّ
الْقَاهِرَةُ النَّاصِرَةُ هَزَّ عَزِيْزَةُ مَدَّ الْوَلَدَةُ فَدَّ لَدَّ
الْقَاهِرُ النَّاصِرُ هَزَّ عَزِيْزُ مَدَّ الْوَلَدُ فَدَّ لَدَّ

Alternate forms of "alif maqṣuura" and final "yaa' "

The standard forms of alif maqṣuura and final yaa' are illustrated below:

فِي لِي لَكِي كِي مَنِي عَلَى إِلَى رَمَى

Alif maqṣuura and the basic stroke of final yaa' may assume the form َ whose horizontal stroke is written beneath the preceding connector. This is especially common in very short words such as /fii/ 'in', /9alaa/ 'on', and /ilaa/ 'to'. Study the examples below (short vowels are not represented):

فِي لِي لَكِي كِي عَلَى إِلَى

Review

Study the following sentences until you can read them fluently.

- ١- الوزير خالد فريد من أشهر الوزراء في حكومة السودان الجديدة ، وهو الآن في مكتب رئيس الجمهورية السودانية .
- ٢- جميلة بشير أستاذة قديرة في مدرسة خاصة في مدينة بيروت . رئيس مدرستها رجل قدير معروف اسمه علي فريد وهو أستاذ اللغة العربية . ماعز الرئيس أستاذة جديدة اسمها سميرة نجيب .
- ٣- جامعة كاليفورنيا أكبر من جامعة كانساس .

Writing the "hamza"

The paragraphs below summarize the rules for writing the hamza in word-initial, word-medial, and word-final positions.

I. The hamza in word-initial position

When it occurs at the beginning of an Arabic word, the hamza is always written in conjunction with an alif.

A. When it has a fatHa, initial hamza is written above the alif. Read the examples below:

أَنَا أَنْتَ أَنْتُمْ أَنْتَنَ أَنْوَاعُ أَجْهَرَةٌ أَخْرَجَ
أَكَلَ أَحْسَنَ أَمَلٌ أَدَبٌ أَكْبَرُ أَيَّامًا أَوْلَادٌ أَرْضًا

Write the above words in ruq9a script.

Write out the following words in Arabic script:

/arkaba/, /alfin/, /amriikaa/, /afḍalu/, /abadan/, /aṣṣṣabu/,

/arba9uuna/, /amsi/, and /aʃlun/.

B. When it has a damma, initial hamza is written above the alif. Read the examples below:

أَفْضَلُ أَسْتَاذُ أَوْلَى أُهُدِي أَمَّةٌ
أَحَارِبُ أَشَارِكُ أَسَّسَ أَعْدِمَ أُعْطِيَ

Write the above words in ruq9a script.

Write out the following words in Arabic script:
/ufarrigu/, /ustaaḍan/, /umamin/, /uslimu/, /unaaqiṣu/,
/ukaatibu/, /udarrisu/, /u9ṭii/, /u9aamiluka/, and
/uHaaribuhum/.

C. When it has a kasra, initial hamza is usually written underneath the alif (with the kasra under the hamza): اِ . An initial hamza which has a kasra may also be written above the alif; in this case, the kasra may be written under the hamza or under the alif: اُ or اِ .

إِرْسَالُ	إِنَّ	إِلْفَاءُ	إِجْلَاءُ	إِيرَانُ
أِرْسَالُ	أَنَّ	أَلْفَاءُ	أُجْلَاءُ	أِيرَانُ
أُرْسَالُ	إِنَّ	إِلْفَاءُ	إِجْلَاءُ	أِيرَانُ

The kasra of a subscript hamza is redundant and may therefore be dropped. Read the following examples:

إِرْسَالُ إِنَّ إِلْفَاءُ إِجْلَاءُ إِيرَانُ

Write the above words in ruq9a script.

Write out the following words in Arabic script:
 /idxaalin/, /irsaalan/, /iiṛaanu/, /iiṭaaliyaa/, /iḍnun/,

/i9daaman/, /idaa/, /illaa/, and /ijmaalan/.

D. If it would otherwise occur, the sequence **اَّ** is replaced by **آ**. Read the following examples:

آيَاتِ آيَةٍ آلَ أَكُلُ أَخَذُ آتٍ أَجَلًا أَلَامُ أَسِفًا

أَرَامِي إِلَهَةً أَسِيَا أَنْ أَتَارُ أَبَ أَذَارُ أَدَمُ أَلَّةٌ

Write the above words in ruq9a script.

Write out the following words in Arabic script:

/aajilan/, /aadamiiyyun/, /aasiyaa/, /aakulu/, /aamiran/
/aaxudu/, /aa9aarin/, /aayatin/, /aana/, /aasifin/, and

/aalihatun/.

Dictation

Write down the following words as your teacher dictates them to you:

اَكْتُبْ اَمْ اِرْسَالِ اِيْرَانُ اَكُلْ اَيَّةُ
اِيْطَالِيَا اُدْرَسُ اِفْطَارِ اَرْضُ اَسِيَا اُنَاقِشُ اَلَاتِ

II. The hamza in word-final position

A word-final hamza is one which occurs as the last letter of the word.

The chair of word-final hamza is homogeneous with the immediately preceding sakl:*

A. When preceded by a fatHa, final hamza is written in conjunction with an alif: if accompanied by a kasra, it may be written either above the alif or beneath it; otherwise it is written above the alif. Read the following

*The term sakl (plural: a\$kaal) denotes a short vowel symbol.

examples:

يَبْدَأُ نَبَأُ مَبْدَأُ قَرَأَ يَقْرَأُ مَلَجَأُ أَبْطَأَ مَلَأَ يَمْلَأُ مَبْدَأُ يَبْدَأُ
أَبْطَأَ يَفْتَأُ كَأَفَأُ أَجْرَأُ يَجْرَأُ نَفَرَأُ نَبَأُ نَبْدَأُ يَتَنَبَأُ أَلَمَأُ يَمْلَأُ
مَبْدَأُ مَبْدَأُ مَبْدَأُ الْمَبْدَأُ الْمَبْدَأُ الْمَبْدَأُ
نَبَأُ نَبَأُ نَبَأُ النَّبَأُ النَّبَأُ أَلَمَأُ أَلَمَأُ أَلَمَأُ

Write the above words in ruq9a script.

[illegible]

Write out the following words in Arabic script:

/qara'a/, /taqra'u/, /annaba'i/, /mabda'in/, /naba'in/,
/kaafa'a/, /yafta'u/, /namla'u/, /mabda'an/, /mala'un/,

/yabda'u/, and /naqra'u/.

B. Whenever it would otherwise occur, a word-final ^ءا is replaced by ِ . Read the following examples:

قَرَأَ بَدَأَ اِبْتَدَأَ تَوَاطَا يَقْرَأُ اُنْبَأُ اُنْبَأُ مَلَأَ

Write the above words in ruq9a script.

Write out the following words in Arabic script:
/bada'aa/, /yabda'aa/, /qara'aa/, /nabba'aa/, and /mala'aa/.

شَاطِئُ قَارِئٍ فَتَى يُنِطِئُ مَلَا جِئُ يُنْبِئُ مُبْتَدِئُ لَا جِئُ

شَاطِئُ مُقَرَّرٌ يَسْتَمَرُّ قَارِئٌ مَلَاجِئُ مُسْتَمَرِّ

يُقَرِّئُ مُتَكَا فِيٍّ يُرِيئُ لَا حِيٍّ يَبْتَدِيٍّ مُمْتَلِيٍّ مُمْتَلِيٍّ

[illegible]

Write out the following words in Arabic script:
 /qaari'un/, /šaati'in/, /laaji'in/, /yabtadi'u/, /bari'a/,
 /muqri'un/, /laaji'un/, /tunbi'u/, /malaaji'a/, /nubbi'a/,
 /mumtali'in/, and /mukaafi'un/.

D. When preceded by a damma, final hamza is written over a waaw. Read the examples below.

تَبَاطُؤٌ تَنْبُؤٌ يَجْرُؤُ تَكَفُّؤٌ لُؤْلُؤٌ يَجْرُؤُ
 تَوَاطُؤٌ تَنْبُؤٌ تَنْبُؤٌ تَبَاطُؤٌ تَكَفُّؤٌ تَكَفُّؤٌ

Copy the above words in ruq9a script.

Write out the following words in Arabic script:
 /lu'lu'in/, /yajru'u/, /tanabbu'un/, /jaru'a/, /tawaaṭu'in/,
 and /takaafu'in/.

Dictation

Write down the following words as your teacher dictates them to you:

شَاطِئٌ لُّؤْلُؤٌ لَا حِيَّ ابْتَدَأَ قَارِئٌ بَدَأَ تَنَبَّأَ
 يَجْرُؤُ شَاطِئٌ يَجْرُؤُ نَقْرَأُ نَبَأٌ نَقْرَأُ كَلَّا

E. If there is no immediately preceding ṣakl, final hamza is written independently (i.e., no chair is used).
 Read the two exercises below:

Exercise 1

شَيْءٌ عِبٌّ مِلٌّ بَطٌّ
 جُزْءٌ ضَوْءٌ بَدْءٌ جُزْءٌ

Exercise 2

مَسَاءٌ بَرِيٌّ سَوْءٌ مَسَاءٌ بَرِيٌّ سَوْءٌ
 بَطِيٌّ جَلَاءٌ سَمَاءٌ يَجِيئُ بَرِيٌّ مَاءٌ جَاءَ جَرِيٌّ
 نَسُوءٌ نَجَلَاءٌ تُسَيِّئُ جَرَاءٌ عُمَلَاءٌ يَنْوُوءُ جَرِيٌّ

Write out the following words in Arabic script:

/šay'in/, /ḍaw'un/, /buṭ'in/, /ʕib'in/, /mil'un/,
/saa'a/, /masaa'un/, /barii'un/, /xubaṛaa'u/, /suu'in/,
/suu'un/, /tajii'u/, /jarii'un/, /maa'un/, and /nasuu'u/.

Dictation

Write down the following words as your teacher dictates them to you:

جَرِيٌّ بَرِيٌّ سَاءٌ مَسَاءٌ شَيْءٌ شَيْءٌ ضَوْءٌ
ضَوْءٌ عَبٌّ عَبٌّ يَنْوُ عَمَلٌ رَجَاءٌ سُوءٌ

III. The hamza in word-medial position

The chair of medial hamza is homogeneous with a contiguous šakl.* Of a non-identical pair, the contiguous šakl which has priority determines the chair; if ranked in terms of priority, the aškaal would assume the following

*A "contiguous" šakl is one which accompanies the hamza or occurs immediately before it.

(b) if there is a contiguous ḍamma but no contiguous kasra, the chair is waaw (e.g., رُؤْفٌ , بُؤْرَةٌ); (c) if there is a contiguous fatHa but neither a contiguous kasra nor a contiguous ḍamma, the chair is alif (e.g., رَأَبٌ , يَزَاءُسُ , كَأَسٌ).

أَفْعِدَّةٌ سَعِمَ رَأْسُهُ إِسْرَائِيلُ زَيْبٌ

قَائِلًا قَائِمٌ سَائِلٌ ذِئَابٌ بُعْرًا حِجْتُ رَعِيسٌ

شَاطِطًا مُقْرَأًا مُسْتَعْرَأًا لَا حِثًّا مُمْتَلِئًا مُتَكَفِيًا مُبْتَدِئًا

كَأَنَّنَاتُ رِئَةً مِئَةً مِئَاتٌ لَا حِثُونٌ يُلَاعِمُ يُرْجِئُونَ

أَسْئَلُهُ الْجَزَائِرُ جُزْئِي تَجَزَّءُ مُتَشَائِمًا مُتَفَاعِلٌ يُنْبِئُونَ

Write the above words in ruq9a script.

[illegible]

Write out the following words in Arabic script:
/ra'iisun/, /ṣaaṭi'an/, /israa'iilu/, /aljazaa'iru/,
/qaa'ilan/, /qaa'imin/, /ri'aasatan/, /laaji'an/,
/bi'rin/, /mi'atun/, /mi'aatin/, /as'ilatin/, and
/di'aaban/.

Now read the following examples in which medial hamza
has waaw as a chair. Notice that in each case the hamza

has a contiguous damma but no contiguous kasra.

سَوَالًا رَاوُودُ يُؤَدِّي مُؤَدِّنِ شُؤُونُ تَفَاؤُلًا
رُؤُوفٌ فُؤَادٌ رُؤُومًا مَسْؤُولًا رُؤَسَاءُ رُؤُفَ
نُجَّارٌ يُؤَثِّرُونَ تُؤَلِّفُ مُؤَلِّفُونَ مُؤَهَّلَاتٍ مُؤَانَسَةً مُؤَخَّرًا
مُؤَامَرَةً مُؤَدِّبٌ رُؤِيَّةٌ رُؤُوسٌ يَجْرُؤُونَ تَشَاؤُمٌ مُرَاؤُونَ
تَبَاطُؤًا تَكَفُّؤًا لُؤْلُؤًا تَوَاطُؤًا تَكَفُّؤًا

Write the above words in ruq9a script.

Handwriting practice lines for the words listed above, consisting of multiple sets of horizontal lines for writing.

Write out the following words in Arabic script:
 /su'aalun/, /lu'lu'an/, /mas'uulin/, /šu'uunan/, /fu'aadin/,
 /mu'aamaṣatan/, /ru'uusun/, /tawaaṭu'an/, /ru'asaa'u/,
 /daa'uudu/, /yu'addii/, /tafaa'ulun/, /mu'allifuuna/,
 and /nu'aθθiru/.

Read the examples below in which medial hamza has alif as a chair. Notice that in each case the hamza has a contiguous fatHa but neither a contiguous kasra nor a contiguous damma.

سَأَلَ يَسْأَلُ تَرَأْسُ شَأْنٌ بَأْسٍ تَأْلِيفُ تَأَثَّرَ تَأْكُلُ
 مَسْأَلَةٌ تَأْرِيبًا تَأَدَّبَ تَأَمَّلَ تَأَلَّفَ يَأْخُذُ
 تَتَأَلَّفُ يَتَأَدَّبُ مَتَأَخَّرُ تَأَخَّرَتْ اسْتَأْجَرَ يَتَأَثَّرُونَ
 يَسْأَمُ نَتَأَخَّرُ يَتَأَدَّى تَأْرِيبِي يَأْكُلُ نَأْخُذُ

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate the following words to you:

رَيْسُ شَأْنٍ مَسْئُولًا سَأَلَ سُؤْلًا أَسْئَلَةً رَأْسًا
رُؤْسًا إِسْرَائِيلُ جِئْنَا تَأْكُلُ قَائِلًا فُؤَادًا مُؤَامَرَةً
سُئِلَ قَائِمٌ نَأْخُذُ شُؤْنًا مُؤَلِّفُ الْجَزَائِرِ مَسْأَلَةً

Exceptions to the rules for medial hamza

A. If it has a fatHa and follows an alif which represents vowel length, a waaw which represents vowel length, or a waaw which represents the second part of /aw/, medial hamza is written independently.

لَاءَ تَسَاءَلَ تَرَافَ رَنَاءٌ قَرَاءَةٌ إِسَاءَاتٌ قِرَاءَاتٌ
مُرُوءَةٌ مَقْرُوءَةٌ سَوَاءٌ سَوَاءٌ

B. Whenever it would otherwise occur, a word-medial أ is replaced by آ. Thus /qur'aanun/ is written as قُرْآنٌ instead of قُرْأَانٌ. Read the examples below:

الْقُرْآنُ مِرَآةٌ مَلَانٌ لَآلِيٌّ مَأْخِذٌ مَارِبٌ مَاوِنٌ رَائِي

By way of review, read the following words as well (notice that in each case آ replaces أ):

أَمَامٌ أَمَالٌ أَلَمَّا أَكَلُ أَخَذَا أَمَرٌ أَمْرٌ
بَدَأَ ابْتَدَأَ قَرَأَ مَلَأَ جَزَأَ بَدَأَ خَبَأَ أَنْبَأَ رَبَأَ

C. After a yaa' which represents vowel length or the second part of /ay/, medial hamza is written over yaa'

no matter what sakl accompanies it. Read the examples below:

الْحَطِيئَةُ مَيْئُوسٌ هَيْئَةً خَطِيئَةً بَرِيئُهُمْ بَرِيئِهِمْ جَرِيئَةً

Copy the above words in ruq9a script.

D. The following exceptions apply when a word-final hamza becomes medial upon the addition of a suffix:

(1) If the final hamza is written in conjunction with an alif, the addition of a suffix (other than the relative (يَ , يِّ)) does not usually change the chair in spite of the priority rules. Read the following examples:

مَبْدَأٌ : مَبْدَأُكَ مَبْدَأُكَ مَبْدَأُكَ مَبْدَأُكَ : مَبْدَأُكَ مَبْدَأُكَ مَبْدَأُكَ مَبْدَأُكَ : مَبْدَأُكَ
يَمْلَأُ : يَمْلَأُهُ يَمْلَأُونَ : يَمْلَأُونَهُ يَمْلَأُونَهُ يَمْلَأُونَهُ : يَمْلَأُونَهُ

Compare the chairs in مَبْدَأِي , مَبْدَأِي , and مَبْدَأِي . Also compare the chairs in يَمْلَأُونَ and يَمْلَأُونَهُ .

2. If the final hamza is written independently after a nonconnector, the addition of an alif or a waaw introduces no chair; if the final hamza is written independently after a connector, adding an alif or a waaw results in the use of 'yaa' as a chair. Read the following examples:

جَاءَ : جَاءَ جَاءُوا أَسَاءَ : أَسَاءَ أَسَاءُوا إِنَاءٌ : إِنَاءَانِ جُزْءٌ : جُزْءَانِ

عَبٌّ : عَبْتَانِ بَطٌّ : بَطْتَانِ مُسِيٌّ : مُسِيَّتُونَ

Notes:

(a) No final ٲ occurs in the Arabic representation of /jaa'aa/ and /asaa'aa/ because ٲ replaces ا not اء . For the same reason, no medial ٲ occurs in the Arabic representation of /juz'aani/ and /inaa'aani/. It must be remembered that, although ٲ represents /'aa/, not every /'aa/ is represented by ٲ .

(b) The alif of nunation cannot be added to words which end in ا or اء ; it can be added to other words which end in a hamza. Read the following examples:

نَبَأٌ مَبْدَأٌ مَلَجَأٌ مَلَأٌ مَسَاءٌ مَاءٌ سَمَاءٌ بِنَاءٌ
نَبَأٌ مَبْدَأٌ مَلَجَأٌ مَلَأٌ مَسَاءٌ مَاءٌ سَمَاءٌ بِنَاءٌ

جُزْءٌ صَوٌّ سَوْءٌ بَدْءٌ شَيْءٌ عَبٌّ جُزْءٌ صَوٌّ سَوْءٌ بَدْءٌ شَيْءٌ عَبٌّ
لَوْلُو تَنْبُو تَكَفُّو شَاطِئٌ لَا جِئُ مُتَلِئُ لَوْلُو تَنْبُو تَكَفُّو شَاطِئٌ لَا جِئُ مُتَلِئُ

Write the following words in ruq9a script:

الْقُرْآنُ مَلَانُ آمَالُ آرَاءُ بَدَأَ مَلَأَ رَبَا مَبْدَأَنَا يَقْرَأُونَ يَنْلَأُهَا
جَاءُوا عَبْتَانِ سَمَاءٌ مَاءٌ صَوٌّ شَيْءٌ مَلَجَأٌ مَلَأٌ هَيْئَةٌ بَرِيئَةٌ

أَصْلُ : الْأَصْلُ : إخراجُ : الإخراجُ : أَسْتَأْذِنُ : أَسْتَأْذِنُ : أَوْلَى : أَوْلَى

إِيرَانُ : كِيرَانِ : إِنْ : فَإِنَّ : أَنْزَلَ : لَأَنْزَلَ : أَمْرِيكَ : بِأَمْرِيكَ : أَوْجِدُ : سَأَوْجِدُ

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

276

deal with adding letters before or after the hamza.*

*Because their application requires more familiarity with the language than the average beginner has, two important exceptions are excluded from the foregoing list and relegated to this footnote for future reference:

(1) In a maṣḍar whose function is closely related to the corresponding verb, the chair of final hamza is alif after a sukuun. The function of a maṣḍar is closely related to the corresponding verb in three contexts (see Wright's Grammar, Vol. II, pp. 54-62):

(a) Where the maṣḍar can be replaced by أَنْ plus the corresponding verb; compare the following pair of

sentences: يُرِيدُ الْبَدَأَ فِي الْعَمَلِ فَوْرًا 'He wishes to begin

working immediately', يُرِيدُ أَنْ يَبْدَأَ فِي الْعَمَلِ فَوْرًا 'He wishes to begin working immediately'.

(b) Where the maṣḍar intensifies the meaning of the corresponding verb: وَطَأَهُ وَطْأً 'He trod on it (with) a treading (i.e., heavily)'.

(c) Where the maṣḍar (together with a following modifier) defines the meaning of the corresponding verb:

بَدَأَ بَدْأً حَسَنًا 'He began a good beginning (i.e., well)'.

Notice that, in the above contexts, both function and graphical representation relate the maṣḍar to the corresponding verb.

In the following sentences, /waṭ'/ and /bad'/ are written as وَطْءٌ and بَدْءٌ respectively (notice that the function of neither is closely related to the corresponding verb): خَفَّفَ الْوَطْءَ 'Tread softly', فِي الْبَدْءِ كَانَ الْكَلِمَةُ 'In the beginning was the Word'.

(2) The indicative and the subjunctive forms of some defective verbs are written with أْ before the last letter. The jussive form of such verbs is usually written with إْ as the last letter; thus the indicative, the subjunctive, and the jussive forms are related one to the other by graphical similarity: يَنَاءِ 'to be distant (indicative and subjunctive)', يَنَاءِ 'to be distant (jussive)'. The jussive form in question may also be written with an independent hamza as the last letter: يَنْءٍ.

Exceptions which are not accounted for in this section should be learned as items.

Dictation

Your teacher will dictate the following words to you:

الْأُرْدُنُّ إِجْرَاءَاتُ جَاءَتْ شَيْئًا شَيْئَانِ يَبْدَأُونَ الْقُرْآنُ أَخَذُ الْإِدَارَةَ
قَرَأَاتٍ تَسْأَلُ خَطِيئَةً يَقْرَأُونَ رَأَيْ بَدَأَ أَمَالًا الْأَصْلُ الْأَلَا تُجَاءُ أَمَالُ مَاخِذُ
إِحْصَاءَاتٍ قَرَأَ جَزَاءَ جَزَاءَ نَبَأُهُمْ نَبَأُهُمْ بَدَأَ شَيْئًا بُطْنًا أَسَاءُوا
جُزْءَانِ مَاءٍ بِنَاءٍ مُرْوَةٍ سَوَاءٌ بَيْتَةٌ هَيْئَةً أَسَاءُوا إِنَاءً

Note:

As explained in the foregoing pages, the chair of the hamza is usually specified by the vocalic environment. Conversely, the vocalic environment is specifiable, at least in part, once the chair is given; thus in texts where the short vowels are not represented, the use of various chairs provides clues to the correct pronunciation of words like the following:

بَأْسٌ بئسَ بؤسَ (= بَأْسٌ بئسَ بؤسَ)

هَزَأٌ هزئَ هزءَ (= هَزَأٌ هزئَ هزءَ)

In addition, the use of various chairs reflects a difference in pronunciation between the two major dialects of ancient Arabia: while speakers of the eastern dialect pronounced the hamza clearly, those of the western dialect pronounced the hamza weakly or replaced it by vowel length in certain environments.* The following are

*See Anīs' Fī al-Lahajāt al-^cArabiya, pp. 75-80.

examples (the eastern pronunciation is given on the right and the corresponding western pronunciation is given on the left; notice that in each case the chair indicates the western pronunciation):

فَارٌ	فَارٌ
بِيرٌ	بِيرٌ
شُومٌ	شُومٌ

Review

Read each of the following passages and prepare for a dictation based on it.

النص الأول

السَّيِّدَةُ آمَالُ فِكْرِي أُسْتَاذَةٌ قَدِيرَةٌ قَرَأَتْ كَثِيرًا عَنْ تَارِيخِ الْمِصْرِيِّينَ الْقَدَمَاءِ
وَدَرَسَتْ التَّارِيخَ فِي جَامِعَةِ الْقَاهِرَةِ.

ذَهَبَتْ الْأُسْتَاذَةُ آمَالُ إِلَى مَكْتَبِ السِّيَاحَةِ وَهُنَاكَ عَرَفَتْهَا الْمُوظَّفَةُ بِعَشْرِ
طَالِبَاتٍ أَمْرِيكِيَّاتٍ حَضَرْنَ إِلَى مِصْرَ لِلْسِّيَاحَةِ عَشْرِينَ يَوْمًا .

حَادَثَتِ الْأُسْتَاذَةُ الطَّالِبَاتِ ، وَبَعْدَ أَيَّامٍ جَالَسَتْهُنَّ فِي بَيْتِهَا وَبَاَحَثَتْهُنَّ
فِي مُشْكَلَةِ تَحْرِيرِ الْمَرْأَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ وَفِي وَضْعِ الْمَرْأَةِ فِي كُلِّ مِنَ الْوِلَايَاتِ الْمُتَّحِدَةِ
وَالشَّرْقِ الْأَوْسَطِ .

ذَهَبَتْ السَّيِّدَةُ آمَالُ مَعَ الطَّالِبَاتِ الْعَشْرِ لِمُشَاهَدَةِ الْآثَارِ الْقَدِيمَةِ فِي الْعَاصِمَةِ
الْمِصْرِيَّةِ وَسَاعَدَتْهُنَّ عَلَى فَهْمِ التَّارِيخِ الْمِصْرِيِّ الْقَدِيمِ .

النص الثاني

أَكْثَرُ الْمُوظَّفِينَ الْحُكُومِيِّينَ فِي مِصْرَ يَبْدَأُونَ الْعَمَلَ فِي السَّاعَةِ الثَّامِنَةِ صَبَاحًا .
يَأْكُلُ بَعْضُهُمْ طَعَامَ الْغَدَاءِ فِي مَكَاتِبِهِمْ ، وَلَكِنْ أَكْثَرُهُمْ يَأْكُلُونَ طَعَامَ الْغَدَاءِ
فِي الْمَطَاعِمِ . الطَّعَامُ الَّذِي تُقَدِّمُهُ الْمَطَاعِمُ الْمِصْرِيَّةُ مُتَنَزِّهٌ ، وَأَكْثَرُ تِلْكَ الْمَطَاعِمِ
تُقَدِّمُ الْكُوكَاكُولَا وَالْبِيسِي كُولَا أَيْضًا .

بَعْدَ الْغَدَاءِ يَرْجِعُ الْمُوظَّفُونَ إِلَى مَكَاتِبِهِمْ ، وَيَقْرَأُونَ الصُّحُفَ سَاعَةً أَوْ نِصْفَ
سَاعَةٍ ، ثُمَّ يَفْعَلُونَ إِلَى السَّاعَةِ الرَّابِعَةِ وَالنِّصْفِ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ .
يَذْهَبُ كَثِيرٌ مِنَ الْمُوظَّفِينَ بَعْدَ انْتِصَافِهِمْ مِنْ مَكَاتِبِهِمْ إِلَى الْقَهْوَةِ ، وَهُنَاكَ
يَشْرَبُونَ الْقَهْوَةَ وَيَسْمَعُونَ الْأَخْبَارَ وَيَتَحَادَثُونَ حَتَّى الْمَسَاءِ ، ثُمَّ يَرْجِعُونَ إِلَى
بُيُوتِهِمْ .

النص الثالث*

يُقَرَّرُ الشَّابُّ الْعَرَبِيُّ الزَّوْاجَ بَعْدَ حُصُولِهِ عَلَى عَمَلٍ ، وَالشَّابُّ الْعَرَبُ الَّذِينَ
يُقَرَّرُونَ الزَّوْاجَ خِلَالَ سَنَوَاتِ الدِّرَاسَةِ فَلَا يَلُجُّ جِدًّا .
يُحَدِّثُ الشَّابُّ أَهْلَهُ بِشَأْنِ رَغْبَتِهِ فِي الزَّوْاجِ ، ثُمَّ يَذْهَبُ إِلَى أَهْلِ الْفَتَاةِ وَخُدَدُهُ
أَوْ مَعَ بَعْضِ أَهْلِهِ وَيُقَدِّمُ إِلَيْهِمْ هَدِيَّةً ، وَيَكْلِمُهُمْ بِشَأْنِ الزَّوْاجِ مِنْ ابْنَتِهِمْ .

*This passage demonstrates the practice of occasionally extending the joining line after an initial or a medial connector. The practice is used primarily to make the left margin straight. It is also used in fully vocalized texts:

(a) To keep diacritical marks from getting crowded together (compare خَبَّا with خَبَّأَ).

(b) To avoid the association of a given diacritical mark with the wrong letter (compare مَبْدِي with مَبْدِي).

يَحْدُدُ الشَّابُّ وَالْفَتَاةُ مَوْعِدَ الزَّوْاجِ . يَحْضُرُ حَفْلَ الزَّوْاجِ كَثِيرٌ
مِنَ الْأَهْلِ وَالْأَصْدِقَاءِ ، وَيَقْدِّمُ كَثِيرٌ مِنْهُمْ الْهَدَايَا إِلَى الْعَرِيسِ وَالْعَرُوسِ .

The first of the preceding passages is repeated
below in calligraphic script then in normal handwriting;
study the passage in these forms, then read it aloud.

السَّيِّدَةُ آمَالُ فُكْرِي أَسْتَاذةٌ قَدِيرَةٌ قَرَأَتْ كَثِيرًا عَنْ
تَارِيخِ الْمِصْرِيِّينَ الْقَدَمَاءِ وَدَرَّسَتْ التَّارِيخَ فِي جَامِعَةِ إِقَاهِقْ .
ذَهَبَتْ الْأَسْتَاذَةُ آمَالُ إِلَى مَكْتَبِ السِّيَاخَةِ وَهَنَّاكْ
عَرَفَتْهَا الْمَوْظِفَةُ بَعْشَ طَالِبَاتِ أَمْرِيكِيَّاتِ مِصْرَ إِلَى مِصْرَ
لِلسِّيَاخَةِ عَشْرِيهِ يَوْمًا .

عَادَتْ الْأَسْتَاذَةُ الطَّالِبَاتِ ، وَبَعْدَ أَيَّامٍ جَالَسَتْهُنَّ
فِي بَيْتِهَا وَبَاغَتْهُنَّ فِي مَسْئَلَةِ تَحْرِيرِ الْمَرْأَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ وَفِي وَضْعِ
الْمَرْأَةِ فِي كُلِّ مَدِ الْوَلَايَاتِ الْمُتَّحِدَةِ الْأَمْرِيكِيَّةِ وَالشَّرْقِ الْأَوْسَطِ .
ذَهَبَتْ السَّيِّدَةُ آمَالُ مَعَ الطَّالِبَاتِ الْعِشْرَةِ لِمَشَاهِدَةِ
الْآثَارِ الْقَدِيمَةِ فِي إِعَاصِمَةِ الْمِصْرِيَّةِ وَسَاعَدَتْهُنَّ عَلَى فَهْمِ
التَّارِيخِ الْمِصْرِيِّ الْقَدِيمِ .

السيدة آمال فكري أستاذة قديمة قرأت كثيرًا من تاريخ
المصريين القدماء ودرست التاريخ في جامعة القاهرة.
ذهبت الأستاذة آمال إلى مكتب السياحة وهناك عرفت
الموظفة بعشر طالبات أمريكيات هن هن هن هن هن هن هن هن هن
حدثت الأستاذة الطالبات ، وبعد أيام جالسن في بيتها
وباحثنهن في مشكلة تحرير المرأة العربية وفي وضع المرأة في كل
الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية والشرق الأوسط .
ذهبت السيدة آمال مع الطالبات لمشاهدة الآثار
القديمة في العاصمة المصرية وساعدتهن على فهم التاريخ المصري
القديم .

APPENDIX I. GRAPHICAL SYMBOLS

List A: The Arabic Alphabet

As defined by Arabs, the Arabic alphabet consists of the following letters (in the order given); for letters which have more than one shape, only the flourished form is listed.

<u>Name of Letter</u>	<u>Arabic Symbol</u>
(<u>hamza</u>)*	(ء)
<u>alif</u>	ا
<u>baa'</u>	ب
<u>taa'</u>	ت
<u>θaa'</u>	ث
<u>jiim</u>	ج
<u>Haa'</u>	ح
<u>xaa'</u>	خ
<u>daal</u>	د
<u>ḍaal</u>	ذ
<u>ṛaa'</u>	ر
<u>zaay</u>	ز
<u>siin</u>	س

*Although considered the first letter of the alphabet, hamza is not listed separately. It is usually treated in conjunction with alif, waaw, and yaa'.

<u>Name of Letter</u>	<u>Arabic Symbol</u>
<u>ṣiin</u>	ش
<u>ṣaad</u>	ص
<u>ḍaad</u>	ض
<u>ṭaa'</u>	ط
<u>ḍaa'</u>	ظ
<u>ḡayn</u>	ع
<u>ḡayn</u>	غ
<u>faa'</u>	ف
<u>qaaf</u>	ق
<u>kaaf</u>	ك
<u>laam</u>	ل
<u>miim</u>	م
<u>nuun</u>	ن
<u>haa'</u>	ه*
<u>waaw</u>	و
<u>yaa'</u>	ي**

Note: The combination consisting of a laam and a following alif is represented by the special symbol لا .

*Except for having two suprascript dots, the shapes of taa' marbuuṭa are identical to final and independent haa'.

**Except for not having two subscript dots, the shapes of alif maqṣuura are identical to final and independent yaa'.

List B: Additional Symbols

<u>fatHa</u>	-
<u>ḍamma</u>	’
<u>kasra</u>	-
<u>sukuun</u>	o
<u>ṣadda</u>	“
<u>madda</u> (written above <u>alif</u>)	T
Dagger <u>alif</u>	’
Nunation with <u>fatHa</u>	=
Nunation with <u>ḍamma</u>	’ ’ ’
Nunation with <u>kasra</u>	-
<u>waṣla</u> (written on <u>alif</u>)	~ I
Question mark	?
Comma	,
Period	.

List C: al-Huruufu l-'abjadiyyah

When listing paragraphs or other segments of written material, English uses A, B, C, D, etc. in the order of the Roman alphabet. Arabic, on the other hand, uses "al-Huruufu l-'abjadiyyah"--i.e., the letters of the Arabic alphabet in the following order:

ا	ب	ج	د	هـ	و	ز	ح	ط
ي	ك	ل	م	ن	س	ع	ف	ص
ق	ر	ش	ت	ث	خ	ذ	ض	ظ
غ								

As a mnemonic device, al-Huruufu l-'abjadiyyah are combined into the following words:*

ابجد هوز حطي كلمن سعفص قرشت ثخذ ضظغ

*The words are pronounced as /abjad, hawwaz, Huṭṭii, kalamān, sa9faṣ, qaraṣat, 0axaḍ, ɖaɖaɖ/.

APPENDIX II

REFERENCE TABLES

This appendix provides eleven tables* which the learner can use to ascertain the correct shapes of certain connected sequences. The sequences in the first table consist of two letters each; those in the other tables, of three letters each.

The tables consist of rows and columns. The "horizontal axis" of a given table is the row at the very top; the "vertical axis" is the column at the extreme right. The initial letters for various sequences are listed in the vertical axis, while the final letters are listed in the horizontal axis; in other words, each row is introduced by the letter which occurs initially in all the sequences of that row, and each column is introduced by the letter which occurs finally in all the sequences of that column. A sequence occurs wherever a row and a column meet. To locate a sequence, one merely locates the square where the appropriate row and the appropriate column meet; for example, to locate a sequence which begins with baa' and ends with kaaf, one locates the row introduced by baa' and the column introduced by kaaf, then locates the square at which the row and the column meet.

*The tables are from Writing Arabic: A Practical Introduction to Ruq'ah Script by T.F. Mitchell, published by Oxford University Press. Reprinted by permission of the publisher.

In tables 2-11, a medial letter occurs between the initial and the final letters of each sequence; that medial letter appears in the same box with the numeral identifying the table.

For the sake of brevity, a set of related letters is represented by the basic stroke; as a result, the tables include variants neither for final šiin nor for final daad. Again, for the sake of brevity, only one shape is used for each of final qaaf, final nuun, and final haa'.

Erratum

The letters of each axis are listed in alphabetical order; in all of the tables, however, the horizontal axis contains an error since waaw should follow, rather than precede, haa'.**

*The error is acknowledged in Mitchell's book.

ی	ہ	و	نہ	م	ل	کھ	ن	ف	ع	ط	س	ر	د	ج	ر	ا	ا	ا
ھی	ھہ	ھو	ھہ	ھم	ھل	ھاکھ	ھو	ھف	ھع	ھط	ھس	ھر	ھد	ھج	ھر	ھا	ھا	ھا
کی	کہ	کو	کہ	کم	کل	کاکھ	کو	کف	کع	کط	کس	کر	کد	کج	کر	کا	کا	کا
می	مہ	مو	مہ	مم	مل	ماکھ	مو	مف	מע	مط	مس	مر	مد	مج	مر	ما	ما	ما
عی	عہ	عو	عہ	عم	عل	عاکھ	عو	عف	عع	عط	عس	عر	عد	عج	عر	عا	عا	عا
ٹی	ٹہ	ٹو	ٹہ	ٹم	ٹل	ٹاکھ	ٹو	ٹف	ٹع	ٹط	ٹس	ٹر	ٹد	ٹج	ٹر	طا	طا	طا
سی	سہ	سو	سہ	سم	سل	ساکھ	سو	سف	سع	سط	سس	سر	سد	سج	سر	سا	سا	سا
ھی	ھہ	ھو	ھہ	ھم	ھل	ھاکھ	ھو	ھف	ھع	ھط	ھس	ھر	ھد	ھج	ھر	ھا	ھا	ھا
بی	بہ	بو	بہ	بم	بل	باکھ	بو	بف	بع	بط	بس	بر	بد	بج	بر	با	با	با

ه	ها	هس	هص	هد	هر	هس	هس	هط	هع	هف	هن	هك	هل	هم	هنه	هو	هه	هي
م	ما	مس	مص	مد	مر	مس	مس	مط	مع	مف	من	مك	مل	مم	منه	مو	مه	مي
ك	كا	كس	كص	كد	كر	كس	كهو	كط	كع	كف	كن	كك	كل	كم	كنه	كو	كه	كي
ن	نا	نس	نص	ند	نر	نس	نهل	نط	نع	نف	نن	نك	نل	نم	ننه	نو	نه	ني
ع	عا	عس	عص	عد	عر	عس	عهو	عط	عع	عف	عن	عك	عل	عم	عنه	عو	عه	عي
د	دا	دس	دص	دد	در	دس	دهو	دط	دع	دف	دن	دك	دل	دم	دنه	دو	ده	دي
س	سا	سس	سص	سد	سر	سس	سهو	سط	سع	سف	سن	سك	سل	سم	سنه	سو	سه	سي
س	سا	سسا	سصص	سدد	سدر	سسس	سههو	سسط	سسع	سفف	سس	سكك	سلل	سمم	سنهه	سوو	سهه	سيي
ح	حا	حس	حص	حد	حر	حس	حهو	حط	حع	حف	حن	حك	حل	حم	حنه	حو	حه	حي
ر	را	رس	رص	رد	رر	رس	رهو	رط	رع	رف	رن	رك	رل	رم	رنه	رو	ره	ري
ز	زا	زس	زص	زد	زر	زس	زهو	زط	زع	زف	زن	زك	زل	زم	زنه	زو	زه	زي

ی	ہ	و	نہ	م	ل	ک	و	ف	ع	ط	س	س	د	ح	ب	ا	خ
یعی	یہی	یوہ	یوہ	یعمہ	یعلہ	یکلہ	یوہ	یھف	یھع	یھط	یھس	یھس	یھد	یھح	یھب	یھا	
یعی	یہی	یوہ	یوہ	یعمہ	یعلہ	یکلہ	یوہ	یھف	یھع	یھط	یھس	یھس	یھد	یھح	یھب	یھا	ح
یعی	یہی	یوہ	یوہ	یعمہ	یعلہ	یکلہ	یوہ	یھف	یھع	یھط	یھس	یھس	یھد	یھح	یھب	یھا	س
یعی	یہی	یوہ	یوہ	یعمہ	یعلہ	یکلہ	یوہ	یھف	یھع	یھط	یھس	یھس	یھد	یھح	یھب	یھا	س
یعی	یہی	یوہ	یوہ	یعمہ	یعلہ	یکلہ	یوہ	یھف	یھع	یھط	یھس	یھس	یھد	یھح	یھب	یھا	د
یعی	یہی	یوہ	یوہ	یعمہ	یعلہ	یکلہ	یوہ	یھف	یھع	یھط	یھس	یھس	یھد	یھح	یھب	یھا	ط
یعی	یہی	یوہ	یوہ	یعمہ	یعلہ	یکلہ	یوہ	یھف	یھع	یھط	یھس	یھس	یھد	یھح	یھب	یھا	ع
یعی	یہی	یوہ	یوہ	یعمہ	یعلہ	یکلہ	یوہ	یھف	یھع	یھط	یھس	یھس	یھد	یھح	یھب	یھا	ن
یعی	یہی	یوہ	یوہ	یعمہ	یعلہ	یکلہ	یوہ	یھف	یھع	یھط	یھس	یھس	یھد	یھح	یھب	یھا	ک
یعی	یہی	یوہ	یوہ	یعمہ	یعلہ	یکلہ	یوہ	یھف	یھع	یھط	یھس	یھس	یھد	یھح	یھب	یھا	م
یعی	یہی	یوہ	یوہ	یعمہ	یعلہ	یکلہ	یوہ	یھف	یھع	یھط	یھس	یھس	یھد	یھح	یھب	یھا	ہ

ی	ه	و	ز	ح	ط	ص	س	ر	د	ج	ب	ا	آ
هی	هه	هو	هوه	هوه	هوه	هوه	هوه	هوه	هوه	هوه	هوه	هوه	هوه
سی	سه	سو	سوه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه
کی	که	کو	کوه	که	که	که	که	که	که	که	که	که	که
فی	فه	فو	فوه	فه	فه	فه	فه	فه	فه	فه	فه	فه	فه
عی	عه	عو	عوه	عه	عه	عه	عه	عه	عه	عه	عه	عه	عه
طی	له	لو	لوه	له	له	له	له	له	له	له	له	له	له
صی	سه	سو	سوه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه
سی	سه	سو	سوه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه	سه
می	مه	مو	موه	مه	مه	مه	مه	مه	مه	مه	مه	مه	مه
بی	به	بو	بوه	به	به	به	به	به	به	به	به	به	به
ای	اه	او	اوه	اه	اه	اه	اه	اه	اه	اه	اه	اه	اه

ی	ہ	و	نہ	م	ل	کہ	و	ف	ع	ط	س	س	-	د	ح	ن	ا	ط
دطی	دطہ	دطو	دطہ	دطم	دطل	دطاکہ	دطی	دطف	دطع	دطط	دطس	دطس	دطر	دطد	دطح	دطب	دطا	
دطی	دطہ	دطو	دطہ	دطم	دطل	دطاکہ	دطی	دطف	دطع	دطط	دطس	دطس	دطر	دطد	دطح	دطب	دطا	ب
دطی	دطہ	دطو	دطہ	دطم	دطل	دطاکہ	دطی	دطف	دطع	دطط	دطس	دطس	دطر	دطد	دطح	دطب	دطا	ح
دطی	دطہ	دطو	دطہ	دطم	دطل	دطاکہ	دطی	دطف	دطع	دطط	دطس	دطس	دطر	دطد	دطح	دطب	دطا	س
دطی	دطہ	دطو	دطہ	دطم	دطل	دطاکہ	دطی	دطف	دطع	دطط	دطس	دطس	دطر	دطد	دطح	دطب	دطا	ص
دطی	دطہ	دطو	دطہ	دطم	دطل	دطاکہ	دطی	دطف	دطع	دطط	دطس	دطس	دطر	دطد	دطح	دطب	دطا	ط
دطی	دطہ	دطو	دطہ	دطم	دطل	دطاکہ	دطی	دطف	دطع	دطط	دطس	دطس	دطر	دطد	دطح	دطب	دطا	ع
دطی	دطہ	دطو	دطہ	دطم	دطل	دطاکہ	دطی	دطف	دطع	دطط	دطس	دطس	دطر	دطد	دطح	دطب	دطا	ف
دطی	دطہ	دطو	دطہ	دطم	دطل	دطاکہ	دطی	دطف	دطع	دطط	دطس	دطس	دطر	دطد	دطح	دطب	دطا	کہ
دطی	دطہ	دطو	دطہ	دطم	دطل	دطاکہ	دطی	دطف	دطع	دطط	دطس	دطس	دطر	دطد	دطح	دطب	دطا	م
دطی	دطہ	دطو	دطہ	دطم	دطل	دطاکہ	دطی	دطف	دطع	دطط	دطس	دطس	دطر	دطد	دطح	دطب	دطا	ہ

ی	ه	و	نه	م	ل	ك	ن	ف	ع	ط	س	س	ر	د	ح	ف	ا	و
یعی	یهه	یو	یعه	یعم	یعل	یعاك	یعی	یعیف	یعیع	یعیط	یعیس	یعیس	یعیر	یعید	یعیح	یعیف	یعا	ی
یعی	یهه	یهو	یهه	یهعم	یهعل	یهعاك	یهعی	یهعیف	یهعیع	یهعیط	یهعیس	یهعیس	یهعیر	یهعید	یهعح	یهعف	یهعا	ه
یعی	یهه	یهو	یهه	یهعم	یهعل	یهعاك	یهعی	یهعیف	یهعیع	یهعیط	یهعیس	یهعیس	یهعیر	یهعید	یهعح	یهعف	یهعا	س
یعی	یهه	یهو	یهه	یهعم	یهعل	یهعاك	یهعی	یهعیف	یهعیع	یهعیط	یهعیس	یهعیس	یهعیر	یهعید	یهعح	یهعف	یهعا	م
یعی	یهه	یهو	یهه	یهعم	یهعل	یهعاك	یهعی	یهعیف	یهعیع	یهعیط	یهعیس	یهعیس	یهعیر	یهعید	یهعح	یهعف	یهعا	ا
یعی	یهه	یهو	یهه	یهعم	یهعل	یهعاك	یهعی	یهعیف	یهعیع	یهعیط	یهعیس	یهعیس	یهعیر	یهعید	یهعح	یهعف	یهعا	ع
یعی	یهه	یهو	یهه	یهعم	یهعل	یهعاك	یهعی	یهعیف	یهعیع	یهعیط	یهعیس	یهعیس	یهعیر	یهعید	یهعح	یهعف	یهعا	ف
یعی	یهه	یهو	یهه	یهعم	یهعل	یهعاك	یهعی	یهعیف	یهعیع	یهعیط	یهعیس	یهعیس	یهعیر	یهعید	یهعح	یهعف	یهعا	ك
یعی	یهه	یهو	یهه	یهعم	یهعل	یهعاك	یهعی	یهعیف	یهعیع	یهعیط	یهعیس	یهعیس	یهعیر	یهعید	یهعح	یهعف	یهعا	م
یعی	یهه	یهو	یهه	یهعم	یهعل	یهعاك	یهعی	یهعیف	یهعیع	یهعیط	یهعیس	یهعیس	یهعیر	یهعید	یهعح	یهعف	یهعا	ه

لُ	ا	ب	ع	د	ـ	س	س	ر	ع	ف	و	ك	ل	م	ن	و	ه	ي
ب	بكا	كب	كع	كد	كر	كس	كص	كط	كع	كف	كو	كاه	كل	كم	كن	كو	كه	كي
ح	حكا	حكب	حكع	حكد	حكر	حكس	حكص	حكط	حكع	حكف	حكو	حكاه	حكل	حكم	حكن	حكو	حكه	حكي
س	سكا	سكب	سكع	سكد	سكر	سكس	سكص	سكط	سكع	سكف	سكو	سكاه	سكل	سكم	سكن	سكو	سكه	سكي
ص	صكا	صكب	صكع	صكد	صكر	صكس	صكص	صكط	صكع	صكف	صكو	صكاه	صكل	صكم	صكن	صكو	صكه	صكي
ر	ركا	ركب	ركع	ركد	ركر	ركس	ركص	ركط	ركع	ركف	ركو	ركاه	ركل	ركم	ركن	ركو	ركه	ركي
ع	عكا	عكب	عكع	عكد	عكر	عكس	عكص	عكط	عكع	عكف	عكو	عكاه	عكل	عكم	عكن	عكو	عكه	عكي
ف	فكا	فكب	فكع	فكد	فكر	فكس	فكص	فكط	فكع	فكف	فكو	فكاه	فكل	فكم	فكن	فكو	فكه	فكي
ك	ككا	ككب	ككع	ككد	ككر	ككس	ككص	ككط	ككع	ككف	ككو	ككاه	ككل	ككم	ككن	ككو	ككه	ككي
م	مكا	مكب	مكع	مكد	مكر	مكس	مكص	مكط	مكع	مكف	مكو	مكاه	مكل	مكم	مكن	مكو	مكه	مكي
ه	هكا	هكب	هكع	هكد	هكر	هكس	هكص	هكط	هكع	هكف	هكو	هكاه	هكل	هكم	هكن	هكو	هكه	هكي

APPENDIX III

ANSWERS TO DISCRIMINATION EXERCISES

The letter "daal"

د ر ک د ز ن ح د ت ز ل د ث د

The letter "daal"

د ت ک د ر د ز د ق ه پ د ف د

The letter "raa' "

د ق ز ل ر م ر

ن ر ز د ه ر و د و

The letter "waaw"

و ق ر و ن ل ع و ز ف ق ص و ق

ر د و ز و ط ن ه و ق و ف ز و

The letter "taa' "

ط ض م ط ف ض ط م ط ظ ق ل ط ض ه ظ

The letter "baa' "

م (ب) ي (ب) ن س ي ج ف

(ب) ي ف ن (ب) ق (ب) ج ض

(ب) ن ي (ب) ف ن ي (ب) ج ن (ب) ج ف ت (ب)

ت (ب) ف (ب) ق ت (ب) ن ي ت (ب) ج
ث (ب) ض (ب) ث م ن (ب) ض (ب) ف (ب) ف

The letter "taa' "

ت (ب) ف ن ق (ب) ي ت (ب) م س ب ن ي ي ج ب ف ث
ت (ب) ف ي ت (ب) ق ض ت (ب) خ ق ث (ب) ض ق ث (ب) ن
ت (ب) ب ث (ب) ق ت (ب) ن ث (ب) ب ن ي (ب) ض ق (ب) ث (ب) ث

The letter "θaa' "

ت (ب) ث (ب) ق ق ف (ب) ق ي ي ف ن (ب) ت (ب) ث
ب (ب) ق (ب) ي ف ض (ب) ي (ب) ث (ب) ي ت ت

The letter "faa' "

ف (ب) ن ف (ب) ض ف (ب) ص ق ض ف (ب) و ف (ب) و ف (ب) ق ع ق ف (ب)
ف (ب) ف ض م (ب) ف غ ط ن (ب) و ق (ب) ن م
ف (ب) ب ط ت (ب) ق ف (ب) ن ت (ب) ط ض ف (ب) ق ض

ح ح ی ع غ ح ن خ خ ج م غ ح ع غ غ ح
ح خ ع ح ی غ خ م ج ح ع ح ن ع غ ح ج

The letter "xaa' "

خ ج خ ن ح ح ح ن ع غ خ ف غ ج ح خ
خ ج خ ح ض ص غ ن ع ح ح ج ض خ ن
ج ح ح خ غ ج ع غ خ ج ب ن غ ج

The letter "jiim"

خ ج غ ع ج ح ح ف ض ج خ ع ف ح م
ح خ خ ج ج غ ص ح خ ج ب غ ج ع ح خ ج
ب م ج ض خ ح خ ح غ ع ج ب ج ح خ ج

The letter "siin"

ش س ش تنب س ن س س ش س ق
و س تنب س من ش ش س ش

The letter "siin"

س ش ش س ش س س ش س س ش س ش ش

The letter "ṣaad"

ص ح ج ع ض ع ض ص س ش ف ص ف ض ق ط ص ط
ب ص ظ ف ص ق ع ح ض ش ص س ح ع ص ط ظ ع
ص ض ق م ص و ص ق و ف ص ق ق ض ص ش س م ص

The letter "daad"

ق (ة) ه و ت (ة) ه (ة) ق (ة) ه (ة)

The symbol "alif maqṣuura"

ي (ى) ي (ى) ي (ى) ي (ى) ي (ى) ي (ى) ي (ى)

The "hamza" (for recognition)

أ (أ) ي (أ) و (أ) ك (أ) ر ن ي ك (أ) و ا (أ) ع (أ) ك (أ)
 أ (أ) ك (أ) و (أ) ت (أ) ي (أ) ر (أ) ع (أ) ك (أ) و (أ) ا (أ) ش (أ) ك (أ)

The numerals

٧	٨	١٠	٢	٥	٣	٤	٣	٢	٩	٦	٩	٣	٧	٨	٤	٥
7	8	10	2	5	3	4	3	2	9	6	9	3	7	8	4	5
٥	٩	٢	١٠	٥	٨	٤	٧	٦	٣	٩	٢	٣	١	٦	٩	٦
5	9	2	10	5	8	4	7	6	3	9	2	3	1	6	9	6

٣٥	٦٢	١٣	٢٨	١٦	١٠	٩٧	٩٠	٨٠	٤٥	٣٦	٢٨
35	62	13	28	16	10	97	90	80	45	36	28

٥٢٣	٧٤٢	٥٠٧	٩٦٣	١٣٨	١٩٧	٩٧٨	٥٤٢	٦٣٨
523	742	507	963	138	197	978	542	638

٤,٥٩٣	٩,٨٧٠	٤,٣٢١	١,٣٥٠	٦,٨٢٣	٩٣٠	١٣٩	١٧٠
4,593	9,870	4,321	1,350	6,823	930	139	170

٢٩,٩١١	١٠,٠٥٤	٢٥,٥٥٥	٢,١١١	٨,٨٨٧	٩,٩٩٩	٩,١٠٢
29,911	10,054	25,555	2,111	8,887	9,999	9,102

٤٥٠,٧٩١	٩٧,٠٥٤	٤٢,٦٣٨	١٠,٠٠٥	١٤,٩٩٩	٣٢,٨٩٦
450,791	97,054	42,638	10,005	14,999	32,896

ο,Υ·Λ,ΥΓΥ	Ξ,·οι,οΥ·	Ι,ΛΓΥ,οΞΥ	ΓΥΛ,ΥΓΥ
5,708,362	4,059, 570	1,862,542	638,362

Γ,ΥΞΛ,ι·ο·,ΙΙΙ
 6,748, 900 ,111

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- ^cAbd al-Muṭṭalib, Ibrāhīm. al-Hidāyah ilā Dawaabit al-Kitābah. Cairo: Center for Middle Eastern Books, 1962.
- Abdel-Malek, Zaki N., et al. Modern Standard Arabic Basic Course. Monterey, California: Defense Language Institute, 1973.
- _____. Modern Standard Arabic Basic Course: Instructor's Manual. Monterey, California: Defense Language Institute, 1974.
- _____. The Sounds of Modern Standard Arabic. Monterey, California: Defense Language Institute, 1973.
- _____. Review: A PROGRAMMED COURSE IN MODERN LITERARY ARABIC PHONOLOGY AND SCRIPT, by Ernest McCarus and Raji Rammuny. Ann Arbor, Michigan: The University of Michigan, 1970.
- _____. "On Defining Colloquial Egyptian Arabic Stems," American Journal of Arabic Studies, Vol. I (January, 1973), pp. 30-36.
- Al-Khaṭṭat, Hashim Muhammad. Rules for Arabic Penmanship: Specimens of Artistic Handwritten Arabic. Baghdad: The Institute of Fine Arts, 1961.
- Anīs, Ibrāhīm. Fī al-Lahajāt al-^cArabīyah. Cairo: The Anglo-Egyptian Bookshop, 1965.
- Fries, Charles. Linguistics and Reading. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Inc., 1963.
- Hanna, Sami A., and Greis, Naguib. Writing Arabic: A Linguistic Approach, from Sounds to Script. Leiden: E.J. Brill, 1972.
- Ibrāhīm, ^cAbd al-^cAlīm. Dalīl al-Imlā'. Cairo: The New Fajjala Press, 1970.
- Lado, Robert. Language Teaching, A Scientific Approach. New York: McGraw-Hill, Inc., 1964.
- Lane, Edward William. An Arabic-English Lexicon. London: Williams and Norgate, 1863.

- Makkī, al-Ṭāhir Aḥmad. "al-Khaṭṭ al-^CArabīy, Nash'atuhu wa Taṭāwwuruhu," al-Lisān al-^CArabīy, Vol. VI (January, 1969), pp. 43-57.
- Ma^Clūf, Luwīs. al-Munjid fī al-Lughah. Beirut: Catholic Press, 1966.
- McCarus, Ernest, and Rammuny, Raji. A Programmed Course in Modern Literary Arabic Phonology and Script. Ann Arbor, Michigan: The University of Michigan, 1970.
- Mitchell, T.F. Writing Arabic: A Practical Introduction to ruq^Cah Script. London: Oxford University Press, 1953.
- Mu'nis, Muḥammad. al-Mīzān al-Ma'lūf fī Waḍ^C al-Kalimāt wa al-Ḥuruuf. Cairo: Government Schools Press, 1285 A.H.
- Schimmel, A. Islamic Calligraphy. Leiden: E.J. Brill, 1970.
- Wright, W. A Grammar of the Arabic Language. Cambridge: The University Press, 1967.
- Zayn al-Dīn, Nājī. Badā'i^C al-Khaṭṭ al-^CArabīy. Baghdad: Ministry of Information, 1972 (especially pages 114, 177, 319-330, 372).
- Ziyādeh, Farhat J., and Winder, R. Bayly. An Introduction to Modern Arabic. Princeton, New Jersey: Princeton University Press, 1957.